

零基础口语速成，会中文就能说英语！

从零开始学


英语

“袋鼠” 走着走



李霞 编著

- ★ 精选实用主题
- ★ 网罗重点词汇
- ★ 串联语法句型
- ★ 汇编经典对话
- ★ 搭配原版录音

 中国纺织出版社



图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

从零开始学英语, “袋”着走 / 李霞编著. —北京: 中国纺织出版社, 2015.3

ISBN 978-7-5180-1306-7

I. ①从… II. ①李… III. ①英语-自学参考资料
IV. ①H31

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字 (2014) 第298093号

策划编辑: 张向红

责任编辑: 张向红

责任设计: 林昕瑶

责任印制: 储志伟

中国纺织出版社出版发行

地 址: 北京市朝阳区百子湾东里A407号楼 邮政编码: 100124

销售电话: 010-67004422 传真: 010-87155801

<http://www.c-textilep.com>

E-mail: faxing@c-textilep.com

中国纺织出版社天猫旗舰店

官方微博<http://weibo.com/2119887771>

北京睿特印刷厂印刷 各地新华书店经销

2015年3月第1版第1次印刷

开 本: 880 × 1230 1 / 56 印张: 10.5

字 数: 450千字 定价: 32.80元

凡购本书, 如有缺页、倒页、脱页, 由本社图书营销中心调换

一点英语都不懂？学过的英语都忘记了？看这本书就对了！

这是一本简单易学，同时也能带给你成就感的英语口语入门书！**100%** 从零开始，不论你的英语目前处于什么水平，只要你有信心，随时都可以拿起本书开始从零学起！

长期以来，对于英语初学者，尤其是对于自学者来说，都期望拥有一本好的英语学习书。学了十几年英语的人有成百上千万，但是真正能将英语学以致用的人却是凤毛麟角。因此，一本比较切合中国英语学习者实际需要的英语学习书就显得尤为重要。为此，我们编写了《从零开始学英语“袋”着走》这本书。此书从成人学英语的实际情况出发，语言深入浅出，内容简单、实用，融听、说、读为一体，携带方便。

本书包含 **4** 大学习阶段：

第一部分 从零开始：零起点学发音

第二部分 初有成效：掌握发音奥妙

第三部分 稳步前进：速学高频句型

第四部分 脱口而出：交流无障碍

本书特色：

- ◆ 分步阶梯学习，循序渐进
- ◆ 精美双色印刷，愉悦视觉
- ◆ 地道美语录音，享受听觉
- ◆ 内容分门别类，丰富实用

最后，再次提醒每一位读者，语言学习是一个循序渐进的过程，学习应该从基础抓起，基础扎实了，以后的学习也就容易了；学习是一个积累的过程，切不可急躁，因急功近利而一下子读写太多太难的东西，会因噎废食，结果适得其反。此外，作者衷心希望每一位读者在学习过程中一定要有信心，祝愿每一位读者最终都能如愿以偿，说出一口流利漂亮的英语！

编者

2014年10月

目录 Contents

第一部分 从零开始：零起点学发音

元音家族

单元音

1. 前元音 /e/ /æ/ /ɪ/ /ɪ:/ 2
2. 中元音 /ə/ /ɜ:/ /ʌ/ 14
3. 后元音 /ɒ/ /ɔ:/ /u/ /u:/ /ɑ:/ 23

双元音

4. 集中双元音 /eə/ /ɪə/ /uə/ 38
5. 合口双元音 /aɪ/ /eɪ/ /ɔɪ/ /aʊ/ /əʊ/ 47

辅音家族

1. 爆破辅音 /b/ /p/ /d/ /t/ /k/ /g/ 62
2. 摩擦辅音 /f/ /v/ /s/ /z/ /ʒ/ /ʃ/ /ð/ /θ/ /h/ /r/ ... 80
3. 破擦辅音 /tr/ /dr/ /ts/ /dz/ /tʃ/ /dʒ/ 110

4. 鼻辅音 /m/ /n/ /ŋ/	128
5. 舌侧音 /l/	137
6. 半元音 /j/ /w/	140

第二部分 初有成效：掌握发音奥妙

字母及字母组合的发音奥秘	148
准确朗读单词的6大秘诀	162
流畅朗读句子的4大要点	179

第三部分 稳步前进：速学高频句型

1 Are you going to...? 你打算……? ...	196
2. Can you...? 你能……?	198
3. Do you mind...? 你介意……?	200
4. How...! / What...! 真……! / 多么……!	203
5. Have you ever...? 你曾经……?	205

6. I am (not) sure...	我(不)确信.....	207
7. I am used to...	我习惯于.....	210
8. I am calling to...	我打电话是为了.....	212
9. I am crazy about...	我对.....很着迷/喜欢 ...	215
10. I can't stand...	我不能忍受.....	217
11. I need...	我需要.....	219
12. I can't believe...	我不能相信.....	222
13. I bet...	我打赌.....	224
14. I didn't know...	我不知道.....	226
15. I can't afford	我承担不起.....	229
16. I feel like...	我想.....	231
17. I enjoy...	我喜欢.....	234
18. I have...	我有.....	236
19. I suspect...	我猜想.....我怀疑.....	238
20. I hope...	我希望.....	240
21. I suppose / I think...		
我想....., 我认为.....		242
22. I've never thought (of)...		
我从未想到过.....		245
23. I'm looking for...	我在寻找.....	247

24. I'm afraid...	我恐怕.....	250
25. I work for...	我在.....工作	252
26. I wonder...	我想知道.....	255
27. I would like to...	我想.....	258
28. I'm looking forward to...	我期待着.....	260
29. If I were you, ...	如果我是你的话,	263
30. It might be a good idea...	是个好主意.....	265
31. It's a good thing...	还好.....	268
32. It reminds me...	我想到了.....	270
33. It seems to me...	我觉得好像..... ..	273
34. It looks...	这看起来.....	276
35. It depends on...	这取决于.....	279
36. It sounds...	听起来.....	281
37. Let's...	咱们.....	283
38. Let me...	让我.....	286
39. May I...? / Can I...?		
我可以.....? /我能够.....?	288
40. Not... until...	直到.....才.....	290
41. On second thought, ...		
再三考虑之后.....	293

42. Shall we...? 我们可以……?	295
43. The reason why... ..的原因是 ...	297
44. There is no reason... 没有理由.....	300
45. There is... /There are... 有.....	303
46. Thank you for... 谢谢你.....	306
47. To tell you the truth,... 说实话,	308
48. What do you think of...?	
你觉得……怎么样?	311
49. What...? 什么……?	313
50. What kind of...? 哪种……?	316
51. Which do you like better, A or B?	
你最喜欢哪个, A还是B?	318
52. Would you like to...? 你想……?	321

第四部分 脱口而出：交流无障碍

第一章 人间自有真情在

1. 家人团聚 Family reunion	326
2. 择友需慎重 Choosing friends	327

3. 期待爱情 Expecting love331
4. 享受单身 Enjoying single334
5. 鼠标爱情 Cyber love336
6. 爱情没有国界 Mixed marriage339
7. 花前月下 Being in love343
8. 单膝跪地 Marriage proposal345
9. 分手的痛 Breaking up348
10. 浪漫婚礼 Romantic wedding350
11. 丁克家庭 Childless couples353
12. 结婚纪念日 Wedding anniversary356
13. 办公室恋情 Office romance360
14. 裸婚时代 Naked wedding363
15. 闪婚当道 Flash marriage365

第二章 绿色出行需引导

1. 地铁出行 Taking a subway368
2. 人在囧途之迷路 Losing the way370
3. 公交出行 Taking a bus372
4. 交通事故 Traffic accident374

5. 交通堵塞 Traffic jam377
6. 问路 Asking the way379
7. 预订机票 Booking a ticket382
8. 办理登机 Checking in385
9. 领取行李 Luggage claiming388
10. 海关申报 Declarations at customs390
11. 乘出租车 Taking a taxi393
12. 自驾车 Driving a car395
13. 绿色出行 Green trip397

第三章 屋里屋外忙不停

1. 享受烹饪 Enjoying cooking401
2. 超市购物 Shopping at the supermarket 404
3. 洗衣服务 Laundry service406
4. 做家务 Doing housework410
5. 在外用餐 Eating out413
6. 烫发 Perming416
7. 买衣服 Buying clothes418
8. 搬家 Moving house422

- 9. 看医生 Seeing a doctor425
- 10. 体育锻炼 Physical exercise429
- 11. 邮寄包裹 Sending a parcel431
- 12. 在美容院 In the beauty salon433
- 13. 在加油站 At the gas station437
- 14. 租房子 Renting a house439
- 15. 办理银行业务 Banking service443
- 16. 在快餐店 At the fast food service446
- 17. 吃自助餐 Having buffet448
- 18. 依依惜别 Saying goodbye451
- 19. 友人相聚 Getting together454
- 20. 邻里之间 Neighborhood456

第四章 忙里偷闲享受生活

- 1. 享受天籁之音 Enjoying music460
- 2. 逛酒吧 At pub462
- 3. 在KTV at KTV465
- 4. 我的博客我做主 Blog468
- 5. 摄影 Taking photographs471

6. 体验网购 Experiencing shopping online 473
7. “宅男宅女” Couch potato476
8. 爬山 Climbing mountains480

第五章 职场新人成功计

1. 求职前的迷茫 Seeking a job483
2. 求职面试 Having an interview486
3. 初试锋芒 The new day489
4. 新人培训 The training for newcomers ...492
5. 上班迟到 Being late for work495
6. 办公琐事 The jobs497
7. 加班事宜 Working overtime500
8. 工作压力 Working pressure502
9. 请病假 Asking for a sick leave505
10. 跳槽 Job hopping508
11. 升职加薪 Raise and promotion511
12. 职场充电 Job training514
13. 辞职 Resignation518
14. 自己创业 Starting a business522

第六章 背上行囊游世界

1. 计划出游 Planning the trip525
2. 选择旅行社 Choosing the travel agency 528
3. 旅馆住宿 Hotel accommodation531
4. 游在欧洲 Traveling in Europe535
5. 郊外野餐 Having a picnic539
6. 照相留念 Taking photos543

第七章 商海沉浮看人生百态

1. 产品介绍 Presenting Products546
2. 商品展览 Trade fair550
3. 商品询价 Price inquiry555
4. 订购产品 Ordering the goods558
5. 付款 Paying the bill561
6. 保险 Insurance563
7. 包装 Packaging567
8. 投诉 Complaints571

第一部分

从零开始：零起点学发音



元音家族

单元音

1. 前元音 /e/ /æ/ /ɪ/ /i:/

前元音 /e/



单词代言

e nd	/end/	<i>n.</i> 末尾
e d	/red/	<i>a.</i> 红色的
e nd	/lend/	<i>v.</i> 把……借给
e ll	/wel/	<i>a.</i> 好的
e lephant	/'elɪfənt/	<i>n.</i> 大象
e ll	/tel/	<i>v.</i> 告诉
e p	/step/	<i>n.</i> 步伐
e xtra	/'ekstrə/	<i>a.</i> 额外的
e tt ^r	/'letə/	<i>n.</i> 信件
e ssay	/'eseɪ/	<i>n.</i> 散文
e ad	/hed/	<i>n.</i> 头
e ngineer	/,endʒɪ'niə/	<i>n.</i> 工程师

internet	/'ɪntənət/	n. 因特网
egg	/eg/	n. 蛋
edge	/edʒ/	n. 边缘
men	/men/	n. 男人

短语代言

when and where	何时何地
have a rest	休息
surf the internet	上网
a bad egg	坏蛋
the head of gangsters	匪徒的头目
get wet in the rain	淋雨
in red	穿着红色的
give someone a lesson	教训某人一顿

句子代言

★ Better late than never.

亡羊补牢，犹未为晚。

★ Ted has got everything ready.

泰德一切都准备好了。

★ Please don't forget to get ready for the lecture.

别忘了为讲座做准备。

★ Every morning Emily eats one egg.

艾米丽每天早晨都会吃一个鸡蛋。

超级绕口令

Whether the weather be fine or whether
the weather be not. Whether the
weather be cold or whether the weather
be hot. We'll weather the weather
whether we like it or not.

无论是晴天或是阴天，无论是冷或是暖，不管喜欢与否，我们都要经受风霜雨露。

前元音 /æ/



单词代言

a sh	/æʃ/	<i>n.</i>	灰烬
c at	/cæt/	<i>n.</i>	猫
b ad	/bæd/	<i>a.</i>	坏的，恶的
a x	/æks/	<i>n.</i>	斧子
a pple	/æpl/	<i>n.</i>	苹果
f at	/fæt/	<i>a.</i>	胖的
b ack	/bæk/	<i>ad.</i>	后面
p lait	/plæt/	<i>n.</i>	辫子
m ad	/mæd/	<i>a.</i>	疯的
c ap	/kæp/	<i>n.</i>	帽子
m arry	/'mæri/	<i>v.</i>	结婚
c abbage	/'kæbɪdʒ/	<i>n.</i>	洋白菜
th an	/ðæn/	<i>prep.</i>	比
h abit	/'hæbɪt/	<i>n.</i>	习惯
f lag	/flæg/	<i>n.</i>	旗子
f amily	/'fæmɪli/	<i>n.</i>	家，家庭

短语代言

develop a **bad habit** 养成坏习惯

a **bad apple** 坏蛋

as a matter of fact 事实上

wave the **flag** 挥舞着旗子

an **apple** in someone's eyes 掌上明珠

hand in hand 手拉着手

wear someone's **hair** in plaits

将头发梳成辫子

a **fat cat** 有钱的大亨

句子代言

★ My dad has a fancy hat.

爸爸有顶漂亮的帽子。

★ That's why the cat is mad.

这就是猫发疯的原因。

★ Everyone wants a happy family.

每个人都想有个幸福的家。

★ I heard the manager had married.

我听说那个经理已经结婚了。

超级绕口令

Sly Sam slurps Sally's soup.

狡猾的森姆喝莎莉的汤。

Can you can a can as a canner can can
a can?

你能像罐头制造商一样装罐吗？

前元音 /ɪ/



单词代言

d ig	/dɪg/	v.	挖
vill age	/'vɪlɪdʒ/	n.	村庄
i ncome	/'ɪnkəm/	n.	收入
silly	/'sɪli/	a.	愚蠢的
s ister	/'sɪstə/	n.	姐、妹
cabb age	/'kæbɪdʒ/	n.	卷心菜
i f	/ɪf/	conj.	如果
s ix	/sɪks/	num.	六
sleepy	/'slɪpi/	a.	想睡的
w ill	/wɪl/	v.	愿意
b usy	/'bɪzi/	a.	忙的
l ittle	/'lɪtl/	a.	小的
b ig	/bɪg/	a.	大的
b aby	/'beɪbi/	n.	婴儿
m oney	/'mʌni/	n.	钱
b usiness	/'bɪznɪs/	n.	商业

短语代言

have little money	没钱
a difficult quiz	一个很难的测验
a medium city	一个中等城市
fit as a fiddle	身体健康
a pretty girl	一个可爱的女孩
a silly behaviour	愚蠢的行为
milk a cow	挤牛奶
within six months	六个月内

句子代言

- ★ I bought a basket of oranges.
我买了一篮子橘子。
- ★ Everyone's business is nobody's business.
三个和尚没水吃。
- ★ You'd better forget your silly idea.
你最好忘记你的愚蠢想法。
- ★ It is impolite to ask others' income.
问别人收入多少是不礼貌的。

超级绕口令

A cricket critically cricked at a critical cricket match, and so this cricket quitted the cricket match quickly.

在一次关键性的蟋蟀比赛中一只蟋蟀突然痉挛，于是这只蟋蟀立刻停止了比赛。

前元音 /i:/



004

单词代言

knee	/ni:/	n.	膝盖
niece	/ni:s/	n.	外甥女
read	/ri:d/	v.	读书
eat	/i:t/	v.	吃
easy	/'i:zi/	a.	容易的
thief	/θi:f/	n.	小偷
free	/fri:/	a.	自由的
bee	/bi:/	n.	蜜蜂
seize	/si:z/	v.	抓住
sheep	/ʃi:p/	n.	绵羊
sheet	/ʃi:t/	n.	单子
meat	/mi:t/	n.	肉
team	/ti:m/	n.	团队
teeth	/ti:θ/	n.	牙齿
pea	/pi:/	n.	豌豆
we	/wi:/	pron.	我们

短语代言

the key of a thing	事情的关键
under a tree	在树下
eat supper	吃晚饭
over the sea	越过海
hold a meeting	开会
after one week	一周后
day dream	白日梦
take the seat	就座

句子代言

- ★ Would you like a cup of tea?
喝杯茶吗?
- ★ A friend in need is a friend indeed.
患难见真情。
- ★ The pea is scattered everywhere.
豌豆被撒得到处都是。
- ★ Don't forget to keep in touch with me.
不要忘了和我保持联系。

超级绕口令

Denise sees the fleece. Denise sees the fleas.

At least Denise could feed and freeze the fleas.

丹尼斯看见羊毛。丹尼斯看见跳蚤。
至少丹尼斯可以喂养和冻死跳蚤。

2. 中元音 /ə/ /ɜ:/ /ʌ/

中元音 /ə/



单词代言

China	/'tʃaɪnə/	n.	中国
panda	/'pændə/	n.	熊猫
forget	/fə'get/	v.	忘记
never	/'nevə/	ad.	从来不
worker	/'wɜ:kə/	n.	工人
federal	/'fedərəl/	a.	联邦的
sofa	/'səufə/	n.	沙发
today	/tə'deɪ/	n.	今天
canoe	/kə'nu:/	n.	独木舟
labour	/'leɪbə/	n.	劳动
alone	/ə'ləʊn/	a.	单独的
terrible	/'terəbl/	a.	可怕的
surgeon	/'sɜ:dʒən/	n.	外科医生
upon	/ə'pɒn/	prep.	在……之上
success	/sək'ses/	n.	成功, 成就
considerable	/kən'sɪdərəbl/	a.	重要的

短语代言

sufficient supply	充足的补给
labour law	劳动法
the federal government	联邦政府
post a letter	寄信
sooner or later	迟早
from cover to cover	从头至尾
her former husband	她的前夫
a considerable thing	一件很重要的事情

句子代言

- ★ My younger sister is a doctor.
我妹妹是一位医生。

- ★ Creditors have better memories than debtors.
债主的记性比债户好。

- ★ The painter used to be a teacher.
这个画家曾是一位老师。

- ★ I met her on campus today.
今天我在校园里遇见了她。

超级绕口令

Her mother correctly recollected Rebecca's answer.

她妈妈准确地收集了丽贝卡的回答。

The bottom of the butter bucket is the buttered bucket bottom .

黄油桶底是抹上了黄油的桶底。

中元音 /ɜ:/



006

单词代言

bird	/bɜ:d/	<i>n.</i>	鸟
purse	/pɜ:s/	<i>n.</i>	钱包
herb	/hɜ:b/	<i>n.</i>	草药
person	/'pɜ:sn/	<i>n.</i>	人
mercy	/'mɜ:si/	<i>n.</i>	怜悯
earn	/ɜ:n/	<i>v.</i>	挣得
sir	/sɜ:/	<i>n.</i>	先生
fur	/fɜ:/	<i>n.</i>	毛皮, 毛
earnest	/'ɜ:nɪst/	<i>a.</i>	诚挚的
burglar	/'bɜ:glə/	<i>n.</i>	窃贼
skirt	/skɜ:t/	<i>n.</i>	裙子
birth	/bɜ:θ/	<i>n.</i>	出生
curb	/kɜ:b/	<i>n.</i>	路边
earth	/ɜ:θ/	<i>n.</i>	地球
courtesy	/'kɜ:təsi/	<i>n.</i>	礼貌
murder	/'mɜ:də/	<i>n. & v.</i>	谋杀

短语代言

burning words	激动人心的话
on earth	究竟
give birth to a baby	生孩子
earn money	赚钱
first of all	首先
urgent work	紧急的工作
search the world	找遍全世界
a charming girl	一个吸引人的女孩

句子代言

- ★ She does research work.
她做研究工作。
- ★ I gave her a dirty shirt.
我给她一件脏衬衫。
- ★ The early bird catches the worm.
早起的鸟儿有虫吃。
- ★ I believe it's a perfect world all the time.
我一直坚信这是个完美的世界。

超级绕口令

The nurses in skirts washed thirty dirty shirts.

穿裙子的护士们洗了30件脏衬衫。

The first person in a dirty shirt works in the third firm.

第一个穿脏衬衫的人在第三个公司工作。

中元音 /ʌ/

MPS 007

单词代言

son	/sʌn/	n.	儿子
blood	/blʌd/	n.	血液
lunch	/lʌntʃ/	n.	午饭
dove	/dʌv/	n.	鸽子
just	/dʒʌst/	ad.	刚刚
hut	/hʌt/	n.	小屋
number	/'nʌmbə/	n.	号码
butterfly	/'bʌtəflaɪ/	n.	蝴蝶
gust	/gʌst/	n.	阵风
uncle	/'ʌŋkl/	n.	叔, 舅
husband	/'hʌzbənd/	n.	丈夫
front	/frʌnt/	n.	前面
other	/'ʌðə/	a.	其他的
customs	/'kʌstəmz/	n.	海关
come	/kʌm/	v.	来, 来到; 出现
tough	/tʌf/	a.	坚韧的; 健壮的

短语代言

young blood	青春活力
run into trouble	陷入麻烦
a flood of tears	泪如泉涌
a sudden gust	突然一阵风
a large number	大量的
run after my bubble	追逐我的梦想
front runner	领先者
as tough as leather	像皮革一样坚硬

句子代言

- ★ Never trouble trouble until trouble troubles you.
不要自找麻烦。

- ★ Promise little but do much.
少承诺，多干事。

- ★ No money, no honey.
没有金钱，哪来幸福。

★ Well begun, half done.

好的开始是成功的一半。

超级绕口令

Old Mr. Hunt had a cuddy punt. Not a
cuddy punt, but a hunt punt cuddy.

老亨特先生有一只小舱平底船。不是一只小舱平底船，而是一个狩猎用的平底船小舱室。

Ducks clucked under the docks with a
ducker in duck ducking into the dark.

鸭子在码头下面咯咯叫，一个穿着帆布衣服的养鸭人一弯腰藏入黑暗中。

3. 后元音 /ɒ/ /ɔ:/ /u/ /u:/ /ɑ:/

后元音 /ɒ/



单词代言

f ro g	/frɒg/	n.	青蛙
m o p	/mɒp/	n.	拖把
c ou gh	/kɒf/	n.	咳嗽
s au sage	/'sɒsɪdʒ/	n.	香肠
o ff	/ɒf/	v.	离开
o bvious	/'ɒvɪəs/	a.	显然的
r o tten	/rɒtn/	a.	腐烂的
w al let	/'wɒlɪt/	n.	皮夹
d ot	/dɒt/	n.	点
w h at	/wɒt/	pron.	什么
k no wledge	/'nɒlɪdʒ/	n.	知识
s qu ander	/'skwɒndə/	v.	浪费
o ffer	/'ɒfə/	v.	提供，出价
o bject	/'ɒbdʒɪkt/	n.	物，物体
s t op	/stɒp/	v.	塞住；阻止
h ostel	/'hɒstl/	n.	招待所，旅馆

短语代言

leave o ff	停止
b ottle opener	开瓶器
around the cl ock	昼夜不停地
keep a close w atch on	密切关注
cl ock in	上班打卡
in the l ong run	从长远来看
l ong before	很久以前
sad d og	放荡的人, 易闯祸的人

句子代言

- ★ Bob has got a good job.
鲍勃找了份好工作。
- ★ Tom is a model.
汤姆是位模特。
- ★ A little pot is soon getting hot.
壶小易热, 肚小易怒。
- ★ She is swallowing a hot dog at the

corner.

她在角落里吃着一只热狗。

超级绕口令

All I want is a proper cup of coffee made in a proper copper coffee pot, you can believe it or not, but I just want a cup of coffee in a proper coffee pot. Tin coffee pots or iron coffee pots are of no use to me. If I can't have a proper cup of coffee in a proper copper coffee pot, I'll have a cup of tea!

我只想要一杯用真正的铜制的咖啡壶煮的正统咖啡。信不信由你，我只想要一杯用真正的铜制的咖啡壶煮的正统咖啡。锡制的和铁制的咖啡壶对我而言也是没用的。假如我不能要一杯以真正的铜制的咖啡壶煮的正统咖啡，那我就要一杯茶吧！

后元音 /ɔ:/



单词代言

four	/fɔ:/	<i>num.</i>	四
mall	/mɔ:l/	<i>n.</i>	商场
core	/kɔ:/	<i>n.</i>	核心
walk	/wɔ:k/	<i>v.</i>	走
saw	/sɔ:/	<i>n.</i>	锯
fortune	/'fɔ:tʃən/	<i>n.</i>	财富
door	/dɔ:/	<i>n.</i>	门
dawn	/dɔ:n/	<i>n.</i>	黎明
pour	/pɔ:/	<i>v.</i>	倾泻
sore	/sɔ:/	<i>a.</i>	疼痛的
horse	/hɔ:s/	<i>n.</i>	马
north	/nɔ:θ/	<i>n.</i>	北方
soar	/sɔ:/	<i>v.</i>	滑翔
border	/'bɔ:də/	<i>n.</i>	边界
daughter	/'dɔ:tə/	<i>n.</i>	女儿
raw	/rɔ:/	<i>a.</i>	未加工的

短语代言

before long	不久以后
raw material	原材料
all in all	总而言之
eat like a horse	狂吃
all thoughts	所有的想法
more or less	或多或少
the former lord	前任君王
border disputes	边境争端

句子代言

- ★ More haste, less speed.
欲速则不达。

- ★ Pride goes before a fall.
骄傲使人落后。

- ★ Paul was born four years ago.
保尔是四年前出生的。

- ★ I saw a horse in the hall.
我看见大厅里有一匹马。

超级绕口令

I saw Esau kissing Kate. I saw Esau, he saw me, and she saw I saw Esau.

我看见艾素吻凯特。我看见艾素，艾素看见我，而凯特也看见我看见艾素。

Knife and a fork, bottle and a cork, that is the way you spell New York.

刀子和叉子，瓶子和木塞，这是你拼写纽约的方法。

后元音 /ʊ/



010

单词代言

w o lf	/wʊlf/	<i>n.</i>	狼
f u ll	/fʊl/	<i>a.</i>	满的
c oo kie	/'kʊki/	<i>n.</i>	饼干
b u sh	/bʊʃ/	<i>n.</i>	灌木丛
f oo t	/fʊt/	<i>n.</i>	脚
w oo den	/'wʊdn/	<i>a.</i>	木头的
w oo l	/wʊl/	<i>n.</i>	羊毛
p u ll	/pʊl/	<i>v.</i>	拔
h oo k	/hʊk/	<i>n.</i>	钩
p oo r	/pʊə/	<i>a.</i>	贫穷的
cr oo k	/krʊk/	<i>n.</i>	弯曲
g oo d	/gʊd/	<i>a.</i>	好的
b u llet	/'bʊlɪt/	<i>n.</i>	子弹
s u gary	/'ʃʊgəri/	<i>a.</i>	甜的
c oo k	/kʊk/	<i>v.</i>	烹调；厨师
police w oman	/pə'li:s,wʊmən/	<i>n.</i>	女警

短语代言

pull through	渡过难关
working poor	穷忙族
push his book	推销他的书
put in a good word for...	为……美言几句
by crook	用尽方法
full speed	全速
sugary cookies	甜饼干
cry wolf	发假警报，谎报军情

句子代言

- ★ She took a look at the cook .
她看了厨师一眼。
- ★ Put the good book on the bookshelf.
把这本好书放在书架上。
- ★ It took me five yuan to buy these sugary cookies.
买这些甜饼干花了我五元。
- ★ His left foot was hurt by a hook.
他的左脚被一个钩子刮伤了。

超级绕口令

How much would a woodchuck chuck if a woodchuck could chuck wood? He would chuck, he would, as much as he could, and chuck as much wood as a woodchuck would if a woodchuck could chuck wood.

假如一只美洲旱獭能够扔掉木头，它可扔掉多少木头呢？它会扔掉，它会，尽全力把木头扔掉。假如一只美洲旱獭能够扔掉木头，它会尽全力扔掉一只美洲旱獭能够扔掉的木头。

后元音 /u:/

011

单词代言

do	/du:/	v.	做
bloom	/blu:m/	v.	开花
pool	/pu:l/	n.	赌注, 池
spoon	/spu:n/	n.	勺子
choose	/tʃu:z/	v.	选择
doom	/du:m/	n.	厄运
glue	/glu:/	n.	胶水
rumor	/'ru:mə/	n.	谣言
noodle	/'nu:dl/	n.	面条
shoe	/ʃu:/	n.	鞋子
rude	/ru:d/	a.	无礼的
school	/sku:l/	n.	学校
you	/ju:/	pron.	你
kangaroo	/'kæŋgə'ru:/	n.	袋鼠
routine	/ru:'ti:n/	n.	日常工作
crew	/kru:/	n.	全体工作人员

短语代言

in the sou p	陷入困境
blood grou p AB	AB型血
secretarial pool	秘书室
plain noodle	阳春面
rumor	传言
blue moon	不可能有的事情
root the bad tooth out	把坏牙拔掉
foot to foot	短兵相接，肉搏战

句子代言

- ★ The water in the pool is cool.
游泳池里的水很凉。
- ★ He will soon move to the new room.
他不久会搬进新屋子。
- ★ Too-too will in two.
过分亲密会吵嘴。
- ★ Bruce is in the mood to see a movie.
布鲁斯想去看电影。

超级绕口令

A tutor who tooted a flute tried to tutor two tooters to toot. Said the two to their tutor,
“Is it harder to toot or to tutor two tooters to toot?”

一个吹笛的导师尝试教两个吹笛者吹笛。那两个吹笛的问导师：“是吹笛难，还是教两个吹笛者吹笛难？”

后元音 /ɑ:/



单词代言

bath	/bɑ:θ /	n. 洗澡
shark	/ʃɑ:k/	n. 鲨鱼
article	/'ɑ:tɪkl/	n. 文章
cast	/kɑ:st/	n. 演员表
large	/lɑ:dʒ/	a. 大的
far	/fɑ:/	a. 遥远的
father	/'fɑ:ðə/	n. 爸爸
clerk	/kla:k/	n. 职员
calm	/kɑ:m/	a. 镇定的
hearth	/hɑ:θ/	n. 炉边
passport	/'pɑ:spɔ:t/	n. 护照
banana	/bə'nɑ:nə/	n. 香蕉
sergeant	/'sɑ:dʒənt/	n. 警官
staff	/stɑ:f/	n. 全体职员
heart	/hɑ:t/	n. 内心，心脏
alarm	/ə'lɑ:m/	n. 警报、警告器

短语代言

behind bars	关在监狱里
have a bar gain	讨价还价
park the car	停车
pass the exam	通过考试
at the staff room	在教研室
pack the parcel	打包裹
on the mar ch	前进
have the last laugh	笑到最后（最后胜利了）

句子代言

- ★ The car is far from the park.
车离停车场很远。
- ★ My father loves art.
我父亲喜爱艺术。
- ★ Her heart is beating hard.
她的心跳得厉害。
- ★ He who laughs last laughs best.
谁笑到最后，谁笑得最甜。

超级绕口令

Master Carl asks his class not to go to the
parks to play cards.

卡尔老师叫他的学生不要去公园打牌。

双元音

4. 集中双元音 /eə/ /ɪə/ /uə/

集中双元音 /eə/



单词代言

area	/'eəriə/	n.	地区
scarce	/skeəs/	a.	缺乏的
fare	/feə/	n.	票价
share	/ʃeə/	v.	分享
rareness	/'reənɪs/	n.	稀罕
heir	/eə/	n.	继承人
bare	/beə/	n.	空的
pear	/peə/	n.	梨
affair	/ə'feə/	n.	事物
mare	/meə/	n.	母马
haircut	/'heəkʌt/	n.	理发
aircraft	/'eəkrɑ:ft/	n.	飞机
fairly	/'feəli/	ad.	公正地
parent	/'peərənt/	n.	父母
airless	/'eəlis/	a.	不通风的
various	/'veəriəs/	a.	各种各样的

短语代言

wear long hair	留长发
a pair of hares	一对野兔
compensation fare	补票
love affair	风流韵事
scare buying	抢购
forced heir	继承人
service area	服务区，业务区
fairly long	很长

句子代言

- ★ This affair is unfair.
这件事不公平。

- ★ Where there is a will, there is a way.
有志者事竟成。

- ★ Where is the Teddy bear?
泰迪熊在哪儿？

- ★ There are various kinds of pears.
有各种各样的梨。

超级绕口令

Be ware! That's a bear lair.

小心！那是一个熊窝。

I cannot bear to see a bear bear down a hare.

When bare of hair he strips the hare, right
there I cry, “Forbear!”

我实在不忍心看见大熊一步步向野兔逼近。当大熊几乎将野兔所有的毛发拔掉时，我大叫：“自制啊！”

集中双元音 /ɪə/



014

单词代言

year	/jɪə/	<i>n.</i>	年
idiot	/'ɪdɪət/	<i>n.</i>	白痴
pier	/pɪə/	<i>n.</i>	码头
cheer	/tʃɪə/	<i>v.</i>	欢呼
sheer	/ʃɪə/	<i>a.</i>	陡峭的
deer	/dɪə/	<i>n.</i>	鹿
gear	/gɪə/	<i>n.</i>	齿轮
earring	/'ɪərɪŋ/	<i>n.</i>	耳饰
serious	/'sɪəriəs/	<i>a.</i>	严肃的
realism	/'riəlɪzəm/	<i>n.</i>	现实主义
realize	/'riəlaɪz/	<i>v.</i>	意识到
experience	/ɪks'pɪəriəns/	<i>v.</i>	经历
museum	/mju:'ziəm/	<i>n.</i>	博物馆
mysterious	/mi'stɪəriəs/	<i>a.</i>	神秘的

短语代言

shear the sheep	剪羊毛
specific experience	具体经历
a real deer	一只真鹿
year after year	年复一年
cheer up	高兴起来
be all ears	专心听
neer right	名义权利
serious injury	重伤

句子代言

- ★ The school is near here.
学校在附近。
- ★ Never judge a person by his appearance.
不要以貌取人。
- ★ The price of the gear is very dear.
齿轮的价格很贵。
- ★ The boy can hear clearly.
男孩能听得很清楚。

超级绕口令

Real weird rear wheels.

真正怪异的后轮胎。

I shed tears for he shears my dear toy deer's
ear.

我流泪是因为他剪掉了我亲爱的玩具鹿
的耳朵。

集中双元音 /uə/

MP3 015

单词代言

poor	/puə/	a.	可怜的
boor	/buə/	n.	粗鲁无礼的人
insure	/ɪn'sʊə/	v.	保险
bourse	/buəs/	n.	交易所
pure	/pjʊə/	a.	纯的
tour	/tuə/	v.	旅行
February	/'februəri/	n.	二月
influence	/'ɪnfluəns/	v.	影响
rural	/'ruər(ə)l/	a.	农村的
curious	/'kjʊəriəs/	a.	好奇的
manual	/'mænjʊəl/	a.	手动的
spiritual	/'spɪrɪtʃʊəl/	a.	精神上的
continually	/'kɒn'tɪnjʊəlɪ/	ad.	不断地
intellectual	/'ɪntɪ'lektʃʊəl/	n.	知识分子
moor	/muə/	v.	用链或锚系
sure	/ʃʊə/	a.	确信的

短语代言

on the moors	在荒地上
as usual	照例
fuel the car	给车加油
in rural areas	在乡下
cure the wounds	疗伤
tour	旅游
go on a tour	去旅行
a poor lady	一位贫困的女士

句子代言

- ★ His rural life is unusual.
他的乡村生活与众不同。

- ★ Are you sure it is pure gold?
你确信它是纯金吗？

- ★ I can't endure this inspection tour.
我不能忍受这种巡视。

- ★ The doctor is sure to cure the poor boy.
医生肯定能医好那个可怜的女孩。

超级绕口令

He lured the poor to lure the poorer.

他引诱穷人去诱骗更穷的人。

5. 合口双元音 /aɪ/ /eɪ/ /ɔɪ/ /aʊ/ /əʊ/

合口双元音 /aɪ/



单词代言

i con	/'aɪkɒn/	<i>n.</i>	偶像
a isle	/aɪl/	<i>n.</i>	走廊
d ye	/daɪ/	<i>n.</i>	染料
l ie	/laɪ/	<i>v.</i>	说谎
b ide	/baɪd/	<i>v.</i>	等待
d ry	/draɪ/	<i>a.</i>	干的
e yesight	/'aɪsaɪt/	<i>n.</i>	视力
t iger	/'taɪgə/	<i>n.</i>	老虎
i dea	/aɪ'diə/	<i>n.</i>	想法
b ite	/baɪt/	<i>v.</i>	咬
p rice	/praɪs/	<i>n.</i>	价格
g uy	/gaɪ/	<i>n.</i>	家伙
p ri v ate	/'praɪvɪt/	<i>a.</i>	私人的
sh ine	/ʃaɪn/	<i>v.</i>	照耀；发光
i tem	/'aɪtəm/	<i>n.</i>	条，条款

短语代言

paper tiger	纸老虎
day and night	夜以继日
net price	净价，实价
big idea	大创意，鬼主意
bide her time	等待机会
wine and dine someone	用酒宴招待某人
private sector	私营部门
lie on	压迫，取决于

句子代言

- ★ She is riding a bicycle.
她正在骑自行车。
- ★ Beauty lies in lover's eyes.
情人眼里出西施。
- ★ Great minds think alike.
英雄所见略同。
- ★ Mike likes his idea.
麦克喜欢他的主意。

超级绕口令

A tidy tiger tied a tie tighter to tidy her tiny tail.

一只老虎将领带系紧，清洁它的尾巴。

Give Mr. Snipa's wife's knife a swipe.

把史立巴先生的太太的刀子抹净。

I'll drive five miles on Friday night to see a fight that I like.

星期五晚上我要开车五公里去看我喜欢的一场拳击赛。

合口双元音 /eɪ/



单词代言

gray	/greɪ/	<i>a.</i> 灰色的
steak	/steɪk/	<i>n.</i> 牛排
eighty	/'eɪti/	<i>n.</i> 八十
gauge	/geɪdʒ/	<i>v.</i> 测量
hay	/heɪ/	<i>n.</i> 干草
pay	/peɪ/	<i>v.</i> 支付
rain	/reɪn/	<i>n.</i> 雨
aim	/eɪm/	<i>n.</i> 目标
daily	/'deɪli/	<i>a.</i> 日常的
say	/seɪ/	<i>v.</i> 说, 讲
face	/feɪs/	<i>n.</i> 脸
snake	/sneɪk/	<i>n.</i> 蛇
hatred	/'heɪtrɪd/	<i>n.</i> 讨厌
jail	/dʒeɪl/	<i>n.</i> 拘留所
plate	/pleɪt/	<i>n.</i> 板块, 盘子
ate	/eɪt/	<i>v.</i> 吃, (eat的过去式)

短语代言

save her face	保住她的面子
daily grind	例行公事
leave a space	留一点空间
take aim	瞄准，设立目标
merit pay	绩效工资，绩效奖
smoky gray	烟灰色
snake charmer	耍蛇者，弄蛇人
mend one's way	改邪归正

句子代言

- ★ Call a spade a spade.
实事求是。

- ★ May became very famous.
梅变得很出名。

- ★ It's a great day today.
今天是个好日子。

- ★ When the cat is away, the mice will play.
山中无老虎，猴子称霸王。

超级绕口令

Greek grape.

希腊葡萄。

My dame hath a lame tame crane. My dame
hath a crane that is lame.

我太太有一只跛脚的驯鹤。我太太有一
只跛脚的驯鹤。

The rain in Spain is mainly on the plain.

西班牙的雨一般都落在平原上。



合口双元音 /ɔɪ/



018

单词代言

oil	/ɔɪl/	<i>n.</i> 油
loin	/ləɪn/	<i>n.</i> 腰
boy	/bɔɪ/	<i>n.</i> 男孩
poison	/'pɔɪzn/	<i>n.</i> 毒药
hoyden	/'hɔɪdn/	<i>n.</i> 野丫头
coy	/kɔɪ/	<i>a.</i> 怕羞的
convoy	/'kɒnvɔɪ/	<i>n.</i> 护航
avoid	/ə'vɔɪd/	<i>v.</i> 避开
oyster	/'ɔɪstə/	<i>n.</i> 牡蛎
coin	/kɔɪn/	<i>n.</i> 硬币
point	/pɔɪnt/	<i>n.</i> 地点
oily	/'ɔɪli/	<i>a.</i> 油滑的
spoil	/spɔɪl/	<i>v.</i> 溺爱
deploy	/dɪ'plɔɪ/	<i>v.</i> 展开
ointment	/'ɔɪntmənt/	<i>n.</i> 油膏
toilet	/'tɔɪlɪt/	<i>n.</i> 厕所, 盥洗室

短语代言

keep to the point	扣住主题
oil and vinegar	水火不容的事物
oily skin	油性皮肤
av oid delay	避免延误
look coy	羞答答
coin telephone	投币电话
explo it an oil field	开采一片油田
under conv oy	在护航中

句子代言

- ★ Roy lost his toy.
罗伊丢了玩具。
- ★ Spare the rod, spoil the child.
不打不成才。
- ★ The boy made a lot of noise.
男孩弄出很多噪声。
- ★ She appointed Roy to buy some oil.
她指派罗伊去买油。

超级绕口令

A noise annoys an oyster, but a noisy noise annoys an oyster more!

噪声使牡蛎烦恼，嘈杂的噪声使牡蛎更烦恼！

Old oily Ollie oils old oily autos.

油性皮肤的老奥利替老爷车加油。

合口双元音 /aʊ/

MPS 019

单词代言

s ound	/saʊnd/	<i>n.</i>	声音
o unce	/aʊns/	<i>n.</i>	盎司
sh out	/ʃaʊt/	<i>v.</i>	喊叫
p owder	/'paʊdə/	<i>n.</i>	粉末
m ouse	/maʊs/	<i>n.</i>	鼠
b ow	/baʊ/	<i>n.</i>	弓
s our	/'saʊə/	<i>a.</i>	酸的
o uting	/'aʊtɪŋ/	<i>n.</i>	郊游
pl ough	/plau/	<i>n.</i>	犁
b ower	/'baʊə/	<i>n.</i>	凉亭
o utfit	/'aʊtfɪt/	<i>v.</i>	配备
c rown	/kraʊn/	<i>n.</i>	王冠
o utdoors	/aʊt'dɔ:z/	<i>ad.</i>	户外
o ur	/'aʊə/	<i>pron.</i>	我们的
h ow	/haʊ/	<i>ad.</i>	怎样
h our	/'aʊə/	<i>n.</i>	小时；时刻

短语代言

between ourselves	不能外传
outdoors practice	校外实习
shout out loudly	大声叫喊
word of mouth	口头流传
go sour	变酸，变坏
shout at	冲某人大喊大叫
mouse potato	电脑迷
down in the mouth	垂头丧气

句子代言

- ★ How about reading aloud?
大声读一读怎么样？

- ★ Out of sight, out of mind.
眼不见，心不烦。

- ★ Go out and play outside right now.
马上出去到外面玩。

- ★ I found a cow outside the house.
我在房子外面发现一头母牛。

超级绕口令

A laurel crowned clown.

带桂冠的小丑。

Amidst the mists and coldest frosts , with
stoudest wrists and loudest boasts, he thrusts
his fist against the posts and still insists he
sees the ghosts .

在布满薄雾，严寒期最冻的那天，他用
最结实的手腕和最夸张的话用拳头猛力
推打柱子，而且称他见鬼。



合口双元音 /əʊ/



020

单词代言

open	/ˈəʊpən/	v.	打开
row	/rəʊ/	n.	排
sew	/səʊ/	v.	缝纫
quote	/kwəʊt/	v.	引用
crow	/krəʊ/	n.	乌鸦
loaf	/ləʊf/	n.	面包
swallow	/'swɒləʊ/	n.	燕子
close	/kləʊz/	v.	关，闭
polar	/'pəʊlə/	a.	两极的
float	/fləʊt/	v.	漂浮
own	/əʊn/	pron.	自己
owe	/əʊ/	v.	欠（钱等）
throw	/θrəʊ/	v.	投掷；摔倒
though	/ðəʊ/	conj.	虽然；可是
show	/ʃəʊ/	v.	给……看；表明
only	/'əʊnli/	ad.	只，仅仅

短语代言

just so so	一般般
throw away	丢弃
close down	查封，倒闭
sew on	缝上
hold a post	保留一个职位
show off	炫耀
loaf away	消磨（时间）

句子代言

- ★ It's so cold in this room.
房子里真冷。
- ★ Everyone will grow old.
每个人都会变老。
- ★ All roads lead to Rome.
条条道路通罗马。
- ★ As you sow, so shall you reap.
种瓜得瓜，种豆得豆。

超级绕口令

Are our oars oak ?

我们的桨是橡树做的吗？

Listen to the local yokel yodel.

听听那个本地土包子唱的岳德尔调。

Moses supposes his toes are roses, but
Moses supposes erroneously. For Moses,
he knows his toes aren't roses as Moses
supposes his toes to be!

摩西假设他的脚趾是玫瑰，可是，摩西的假设错了。摩西知道他的脚趾并不是玫瑰，因为他只是假设它们是玫瑰。



辅音家族

1. 爆破辅音 /b/ /p/ /d/ /t/ /k/ /g/

爆破辅音 /b/



021

单词代言

grab	/græb/	v.	抓取
crab	/kræb/	n.	蟹
globe	/gləʊb/	n.	全球
basis	/'beɪsɪs/	n.	基础, 根据
butter	/'bʌtə/	n.	黄油
cabin	/'kæbɪn/	n.	小屋
bread	/bred/	n.	面包
block	/blɒk/	v.	堵塞
beet	/bi:t/	n.	甜菜
bad	/bæd/	a.	坏的
lobby	/'lɒbi/	n.	休息厅
building	/'bɪldɪŋ/	n.	建筑物
brave	/breɪv/	a.	勇敢的
boss	/bɒs/	n.	老板, 上司

absent /'æbsənt/ *a.* 不在场的

absorb /əb'sɔ:b/ *vt.* 吸收；吸引

短语代言

bad debt	坏账
living habit	生活习惯
as blind as a bat	瞎得厉害
bread and butter	黄油面包
baked beef	烤牛肉
legal basis	法律依据
bag and baggage	所有
black and blue	青一块紫一块

句子代言

★ Bob is absent because of backache.

由于背痛，鲍勃没来。

★ After bad luck comes good luck.

否极泰来。

★ Barking dogs do not bite.

会叫的狗不咬人。

★ Let bygones be bygones!

让过去的事情就过去吧！

超级绕口令

A big black bug bits a big black bear.
Where's the big black bear the big black
bug bit?

大黑虫咬大黑熊。被大黑虫咬的大黑熊
在哪里呢？

A bloke's back bike brake block broke.

一个家伙的脚踏车后制动器坏了。

A bachelor botched a batch of badly baked
biscuits.

一个单身汉弄坏了一炉烤糟的饼干。

爆破辅音 /p/



022

单词代言

paper	/'peɪpə/	n.	纸
pig	/pɪg/	n.	猪
deep	/di:p/	a.	深的
put	/put/	v.	放
cup	/kʌp/	n.	杯子
piece	/pi:s/	n.	张
pay	/peɪ/	v.	付款
keep	/ki:p/	v.	保持
peep	/pi:p/	v.	窥看
appear	/ə'piə/	v.	显现
map	/mæp/	n.	地图
happy	/'hæpi/	a.	高兴的
Spain	/speɪn/	n.	西班牙
pump	/pʌmp/	n.	抽水机
passport	/'pa:spɔ:t/	n.	护照
plaster	/'plɑ:stə/	n.	石膏, 灰泥

短语代言

put aside	储存，放在一边
keep house	管理家务
help the poor	帮助穷人
peep at	窥视，偷看
gate pass	通行证
a piece of paper	一张纸
pay out	付出
a pretty present	一件漂亮的礼物

句子代言

- ★ Peter is playing the piano.
彼得正在弹钢琴。
- ★ Practice makes perfect.
熟能生巧。
- ★ There is a power plant.
那里有一个发电厂。
- ★ I saw a man peeping at the house.
我看见一个人在偷窥这个房子。

超级绕口令

Peter Potter splattered a plate of peas on
Patty Platt's pink plaid pants.

彼得·波特将一碟豌豆撒在帕蒂·普拉
特的粉红色格呢短裤上。

Chop shops chop chops.

印章店备有印章。

爆破辅音 /d/



单词代言

d ebt	/det/	<i>n.</i> 债务
d ig	/dɪg/	<i>v.</i> 挖, 掘
d ialogue	/'daɪələʊg/	<i>n.</i> 对话
d elight	/dɪ'laɪt/	<i>n.</i> 高兴
d elusion	/dɪ'lu:ʒən/	<i>n.</i> 错觉
d octor	/'dɒktə/	<i>n.</i> 医生
mad	/mæd/	<i>a.</i> 疯的
bread	/bred/	<i>n.</i> 面包
d ecision	/dɪ'sɪʒən/	<i>n.</i> 决定
d ouble	/'dʌbl/	<i>a.</i> 双(重)的
d uty	/'dju:ti/	<i>n.</i> 义务; 责任
ad mission	/əd'mɪʃən/	<i>n.</i> 准许进入; 承认
d isillusion	/.dɪsɪ'lu:ʒən/	<i>v.</i> 使幻想破灭
d epartment	/dɪ'pɑ:tmənt/	<i>n.</i> 部, 部门, 系
d iversity	/daɪ'vɜ:sɪti/	<i>n.</i> 多样, 变化万千
i dea	/aɪ'diə/	<i>n.</i> 主意, 念头, 思想

短语代言

off d uty	下班，不值班
cry aloud s uddenly	突然大声喊
go m ad	疯了
d irty and d ry	又脏又干燥
d ay by d ay	每日，逐日
make a d ecision	下决心，作决定
d ig up	掘起，挖出
i deal price	期望价格，理想价

句子代言

- ★ Don't depend on anybody.
不要依赖任何人。

- ★ Do it well or not at all.
干就好好干，不然就不干。

- ★ My daughter likes bread instead of rice.
我女儿喜欢面包而不是米饭。

- ★ A promise made is a debt unpaid.
许下的诺言，是一笔未还的债务。

超级绕口令

Double bubble gum bubbles double.

双重的泡泡糖能吹双重的泡泡。

Do drop in at the Dewdrop Inn.

到露珠旅馆要进内一坐。

Debbie did not destroy Darrell's dishes.

Darrell destroyed Debbie's dishes.

德比没有砸烂达雷尔的盘子，达雷尔砸烂了德比的盘子。

爆破辅音 /t/

 024

单词代言

next	/nekst/	a.	下一个
teacher	/'tɪ:tʃə/	n.	教师
fatal	/'feɪtl/	a.	致命的
paint	/peɪnt/	n.	油漆
tide	/taɪd/	n.	潮；潮水
butter	/'bʌtə/	n.	黄油
fat	/fæt/	a.	肥胖的
item	/'aɪtəm/	n.	项目
turtle	/'tɜ:tl/	n.	海龟
watt	/wɒt/	n.	瓦特
delight	/dɪ'laɪt/	n.	高兴
tale	/teɪl/	n.	故事
debt	/det/	n.	债务
pocket	/'pɒkɪt/	n.	口袋
centigrade	/'sentɪgreɪd/	adj.	摄氏的
president	/'prezɪdənt/	n.	主席，总统

短语代言

not at all	一点儿也不
at times	有时
turn tail	退走，逃跑
in debt	欠债，欠情
fatal accident	死亡事故
put on your coat	穿上你的外套
write a letter	写一封信
tell tales	讲人坏话，搬弄是非

句子代言

- ★ Ted is taller than Tom.
泰德比汤姆高。
- ★ Peter wanted to drink water.
彼得想喝水。
- ★ Tim told us Tom's story in tears.
蒂姆留着眼泪讲述了汤姆的故事。
- ★ Time is limited, so time is money.
时间是有限的，所以时间就是金钱。

超级绕口令

A tidy tiger tied a tie tighter to tidy her tiny tail.

一只干净的老虎系紧了领带清洁它的小尾巴。

Ten tiny tortoises tried to talk to twenty timid toads.

十只小乌龟试着和二十只胆小的蟾蜍说话。

爆破辅音 /k/

MP3 025

单词代言

k itchen	/'kɪtʃɪn/	n.	厨房
e qual	/'i:kwəl/	n.	平等
c at	/'kæt/	n.	猫
o ccur	/ə'kə:/	v.	出现
k ick	/'kɪk/	v.	踢
c linic	/'kɪnɪk/	n.	诊所
q uiet	/'kwaɪət/	a.	安静的
q uit	/'kwɪt/	v.	辞职
c ook	/'kʊk/	n.	厨师
k iss	/'kɪs/	v./n.	亲吻
k ing	/'kɪŋ/	n.	国王
c razy	/'kreɪzɪ/	a.	疯狂的
c lever	/'klevə/	a.	机灵的, 聪明的
c up	/'kʌp/	v.	使成杯形; n. 杯子
sh ake	/'ʃeɪk/	v.	摇, 使振动; 摇动
e ffect	/'ɪfekt/	n.	结果; 影响; 效果

短语代言

take effect	生效
kick out	解雇
pick up	捡起
care for	照顾
back countries	穷乡僻壤
quit school	休学，辍学
a cute clock	一个可爱的闹钟
look at the kite	看这只风筝

句子代言

- ★ Jack likes chocolate.
杰克喜欢巧克力。

- ★ Mike's back aches.
迈克的后背痛。

- ★ One cannot set back the clock.
光阴一去不复返。

- ★ Keep some till more come.
手下留底，再来不愁。

超级绕口令

Keep clean socks in a clean sock stack.

把干净的短袜存放在干净的短袜柜里。

Kris Kringle carefully crunched on candy canes.

克瑞斯·克里高小心地嚼甘蔗。

爆破辅音 /g/



单词代言

give	/gɪv/	v.	给
sugar	/'ʃʊgə/	n.	糖
grass	/grɑ:s/	n.	草坪
garage	/'gærɑ:ʒ/	n.	车库
rug	/rʌg/	n.	毯子
gold	/gəʊld/	a.	金色的
gas	/gæs/	n.	汽油
go	/gəʊ/	v.	去, 变得
language	/'læŋgwɪdʒ/	n.	语言
government	/'gʌvənmənt/	n.	政府
together	/tə'geðə/	ad.	一起
negotiation	/nɪ,gəʊʃi'eɪʃən/	n.	协商
hug	/hʌg/	v.&n.	拥抱
ghost	/gəʊst/	n.	鬼, 灵魂
mortgage	/'mɔ:ɡɪdʒ/	n.&vt.	抵押
organic	/ɔ:'gæɪnɪk/	adj.	有机的

短语代言

give a g lance	看一眼
bear h ug	熊抱
g reen g rass	绿色的草
g ive a way	泄露, 赠送
associate d e g ree	(美) 肄业证书
g uide a character	引导角色
as g ood as g old	(小孩) 很乖
without e x a mple	空前地, 无先例地

句子代言

- ★ A good name is worth more than gold.
美名是无价之宝。
- ★ He gave me a gun.
他给我一把枪。
- ★ Great hopes make great men.
伟大志向成就伟人。
- ★ Give as good as one gets.
以其人之道还治其人之身。

超级绕口令

Give me the gift of a grip top sock : a drip-drape, ship-shape, tip-top sock.

送我一对有紧袜带的袜子：悬挂状的，船形的，品质一流的袜子。

Give Papa a cup of proper coffee in a copper coffee cup.

给爸爸一杯用铜制咖啡杯盛着的正统咖啡。

Cows graze in groves on grass which grows in grooves in groves.

在小树林中，母牛吃在沟槽中生长的草。

2. 摩擦辅音 /f/ /v/ /s/ /z/ /ʒ/ /ʃ/ /ð/ /θ/ /h/ /r/

摩擦辅音 /f/



单词代言

f lower	/ˈflaʊə/	<i>n.</i>	花
tough	/tʌf/	<i>a.</i>	僵硬的
ph oto	/ˈfəʊtəʊ/	<i>n.</i>	照片
h alf	/hɑ:f/	<i>a.</i>	一半的
de fend	/dɪˈfend/	<i>v.</i>	防守
fe eling	/ˈfi:lɪŋ/	<i>n.</i>	感觉
cough	/kɒf/	<i>n.</i>	咳嗽
fa ith	/feɪθ/	<i>n.</i>	信仰
de fine	/dɪˈfaɪn/	<i>v.</i>	定义
th ief	/θɪ:f/	<i>n.</i>	贼
st iff	/stɪf/	<i>a.</i>	僵直的
cl iff	/klɪf/	<i>n.</i>	悬崖
fr agile	/ˈfrædʒaɪl/	<i>a.</i>	易碎的
con fusion	/kənˈfju:ʒən/	<i>n.</i>	混乱
f uture	/ˈfju:tʃə/	<i>n.</i>	将来, 未来
rou gh	/rʌf/	<i>a.</i>	表面不平的

短语代言

far from it	远非如此
fall out	争吵
face to face	面对面
feel free	随便些
good faith	诚意，诚信
laugh off	一笑置之
flower bed	花坛
defend against	保卫，抵抗

句子代言

- ★ Fine feathers make fine birds.
人靠衣裳马靠鞍。

- ★ Fame is a magnifying glass.
名声是放大镜。

- ★ The butterfly flitted from flower to flower.
蝴蝶在花丛中掠过。

- ★ This fisher is selling fresh fish.
这个渔夫在卖鲜鱼。

超级绕口令

Flee from fog to fight flu fast.

避开浓雾，感冒会快速痊愈。

Freshly fried fresh flesh.

鲜炸鲜肉。

Five fat friars are frying flat-fish.

五个胖的男修士在煎比目鱼。

摩擦辅音 /v/



028

单词代言

dove	/dʌv/	n. 鸽子
evening	/'i:vniŋ/	n. 晚上
level	/'levl/	n. 水平
eve	/'i:v/	n. 前夕
value	/'vælju:/	n. 价值
move	/mu:v/	v. 移动
very	/'veri/	ad. 非常
violin	/'vaiə'li:n/	n. 小提琴
government	/'gʌvənmənt/	n. 政府
television	/'telɪ'vɪʒən/	n. 电视机
drive	/draɪv/	v. 驱赶；驾驶
provide	/prə'vaɪd/	vt. 供给，提供
invasion	/'ɪn'veɪʒən/	n. 入侵，侵略
improve	/'ɪm'pru:v/	vt. 改进，改善
diversity	/'daɪ'vɜ:sɪti/	n. 多样



短语代言

improve quality	提高质量
various views	各种各样的观点
visit the village	参观村庄
give out	用完，消耗尽
negative virtue	消极的美德
an invalid visa	一张无效的签证
over and over again	一次又一次地
a very hot oven	一个非常热的炉子

句子代言

- ★ Forgive and forget.
勿念旧恶。

- ★ Victor only eats vegetables.
维克多只吃蔬菜。

- ★ The visitor went to the village.
参观者去了那个村庄。

- ★ He has a valuable valley villa.
他有一幢昂贵的峡谷别墅。

超级绕口令

Various visitors visited the village.

各种各样的访问者访问了这座村庄。

摩擦辅音 /s/

MP3 029

单词代言

see	/si:/	v.	看见	
sister	/'sɪstə/	n.	姐妹	
dress	/dres/	n.	衣服	
science	/'saɪəns/	n.	科学	
smooth	/smu:ð/	a.	光滑的	
suppress	/sə'pres/	vt.	压制	
chopsticks	/'tʃɒpstɪks/	n.	筷子	
centimeter	/'sentɪ,mɪ:tə/	n.	厘米	
resource	/ri'sɔ:s/	n.	资源, 财力	
south	/sauθ/	n.	南方	a. 南方的
cinema	/'sɪnɪmə/	n.	电影院, 电影	
sorry	/'sɒri/	a.	难过的; 对不起的	
zealous	/'zeləs/	a.	热心的, 热情的	
stereo	/'stiəriəu/	n.	立体声音响	

diversity /daɪ'vɜ:sɪti/ *n.* 多样, 变化万千

administrator /əd'mɪnɪstreɪtə/ *n.* 管理者

短语代言

see the sea

看大海

seek some books

找一些书

sink or swim

孤注一掷

zealous in

热心于

dress rehearsal

彩排

human resource

人力资源

pass away

去世

a slight sign

轻声的叹息

句子代言

★ Practice makes perfect.

熟能生巧。

★ Sarah feels sick on the sea.

萨拉晕船。

★ My sister speaks no truth.

我的妹妹没一句真话。

★ No cross , no crown.

未经苦难，不得荣冠。

超级绕口令

Sam's shop stocks short spotted socks.

萨姆的店备有圆点短袜。

Swan swam over the sea, swim, swan swim!

Swan swam back again, well swum, swan!

天鹅游到海的另一边，游吧，天鹅游吧！
天鹅游回来了，游得真好，天鹅！

He kisses the miss and she misses the kisses.

他吻那位小姐，而她对这些吻念念不忘。

摩擦辅音 /z/



单词代言

buzz	/bʌz/	n.	嗡嗡声
easy	/'i:zi/	a.	容易的
busy	/'bizi/	a.	繁忙的
lose	/lu:z/	n.	损失
nose	/nəʊz/	n.	鼻子
news	/nju:z/	n.	新闻
crazy	/'kreizi/	a.	疯狂的
choose	/tʃu:z/	v.	选择
raise	/reiz/	v.	养育，举起
wisdom	/'wɪzdəm/	n.	智慧
business	/'bɪznɪs/	n.	商业，生意
zealous	/'zeləs/	a.	热心的，热情的
prize	/praɪz/	n.	奖赏，奖金；珍视
wise	/waɪz/	a.	聪明的，有智慧的
please	/pli:z/	v.	使高兴，请，满意
citizen	/'sɪtɪzn/	n.	公民；市民，居民

短语代言

doze off	打瞌睡
because of	因为
nose to nose	鼻子对鼻子
zealous in	热心于
cozy clothes	舒适的衣服
wise up	知道，意识到
analyze news	分析消息
on business	因公出差办事

句子代言

- ★ As said, as done.
说到做到。
- ★ This parking zone is near the zoo.
这个停车场靠近公园。
- ★ Her husband has an ear for music.
她丈夫对音乐很有鉴赏力。
- ★ It is not easy to zip up his jacket.
给他的夹克衫拉上拉链真不容易。

超级绕口令

This is a zither. Is this a zither? This is
Zoe's sister's zither.

这是一只齐特琴。这是一只齐特琴吗？
这是佐伊的妹妹的齐特琴。

Fuzzy wuzzy was a bear. Fuzzy wuzzy had
no hair.

Fuzzy wuzzy wasn't fuzzy, was he?

毛绒绒，软绵绵的是玩具熊。毛绒绒，
软绵绵一根头发也没有。毛绒绒，软绵
绵的玩具熊并不毛绒绒，是吗？

摩擦辅音 /z/



单词代言

occasion	/ə'keɪzən/	n. 场合
illusion	/ɪ'lu:zən/	n. 幻觉
pleasure	/'plezə/	n. 愉快
garage	/'gærɑ:ʒ/	n. 车库
seizure	/'si:zə/	n. 掠夺
delusion	/di'lu:zən/	n. 错觉
confusion	/kən'fju:zən/	n. 混乱
explosion	/ɪks'pləʊzən/	n. 爆炸
television	/'telɪ'vɪzən/	n. 电视机
invasion	/ɪn'veɪzən/	n. 入侵, 侵略
enclosure	/ɪn'kləʊzə/	n. 围场, 圈地
regime	/'reiʒɪm/	n. 政体, 政权
mirage	/'mɪrɑ:ʒ/	n. 幻影, 海市蜃楼
leisure	/'leɪzə/	n. 空闲时间; 悠闲
Peugeot	/'pɜ:ʒəʊ/	n. 标致(汽车品牌)
measure	/'meɪzə/	n. 尺寸; 具; 测量

短语代言

on occasion	偶然地
on this occasion	在这个场合
population explosion	人口激增
see a vision casually	偶尔看到幻影
at pleasure	随意，随时
treasure the art treasure	珍爱艺术财富
unusual conclusion	不寻常的结论
usual pleasure	一如既往的快乐

句子代言

- ★ I have some illusions on occasion.
我偶尔会有一些幻想。

- ★ He was late again as usual.
他和往常一样又迟到了。

- ★ Treasure is not always a friend.
财富并非一定是朋友。

- ★ Eat with pleasure and drink with measure.
进食可随意，饮酒要适量。

超级绕口令

George placed his broken televisions in the garage.

乔治把他坏了的电视放在了车库里。

摩擦辅音 /ʃ/



032

单词代言

finish	/'fɪnɪʃ/	v.	结束
shift	/ʃɪft/	v.	移位
show	/ʃəʊ/	v.	表明
shut	/ʃʌt/	v.	关闭
shy	/ʃaɪ/	a.	害羞的
trash	/træʃ/	n.	垃圾
cash	/kæʃ/	n.	现款
rush	/rʌʃ/	v.	冲进
crash	/kræʃ/	v.	猛撞
mission	/'mɪʃən/	n.	任务
sugar	/'ʃʊgə/	n.	糖
shelter	/'ʃeltə/	n.	掩蔽处
motion	/'məʊʃən/	n.	动作
shake	/ʃeɪk/	v.	摇；摇动
delicious	/dɪ'liʃəs/	a.	可口的
professional	/prə'feʃənəl/	a.	职业的

短语代言

pay attention	注意
share the sunshine	享受阳光
short of cash	缺少现金
trash can	垃圾桶
finish up	结束，完成
price crash	削价
a flash shot	闪电的一击
shut out	排除

句子代言

- ★ She is very shy.
她很害羞。
- ★ We're short of cash.
我们缺少现金。
- ★ I will shop for fresh fish.
我要去买新鲜的鱼。
- ★ You should show this to me.
你应该把这个出示给我。

超级绕口令

I wish you were a fish in my dish.

我巴不得你是我碟中的鱼。

Selfish shellfish.

自私的水生有壳动物。

An English fisherman wishes to get a
foolish fish for a cold dish.

一位英国渔夫希望抓到一条傻瓜鱼做一道凉菜。

摩擦辅音 /ð/



033

单词代言

th an	/ðæn/	conj.	比
th eir	/ðeə/	pron.	他们的
bro th er	/'brʌðə/	n.	兄, 弟
ra th er	/'rɑ:ðə/	ad.	相当
wea th er	/'weðə/	n.	天气
mo th er	/'mʌðə/	n.	妈妈
fa th er	/'fa:ðə/	n.	爸爸
smoo th	/smu:ð/	a.	光滑的
th ey	/ðei/	pron.	他们
ei th er	/'aɪðə/	ad.	或, 也
th ese	/ði:z/	pron.	这些
th ose	/ðəʊz/	pron.	那些
th em	/ðəm/	pron.	他们
th erefore	/'ðeəfɔ:/	ad.	因此
o th erwise	/'ʌðəwaɪz/	conj.	否则
th ough	/ðəʊ/	conj.	尽管, 虽然

短语代言

father's brothers	父亲的兄弟们
either... or...	要么……要么……
their leather	他们的皮革制品
smooth over	消除，缓和，减轻
bathe with him	和他一起洗澡
then and there	就在当时当地
farther on	在前面，更远
rather than	不是……（而是），而不是

句子代言

- ★ This one is better than that one.
这个比那个好。

- ★ They who know nothing fear nothing.
初生牛犊不怕虎。

- ★ My father and mother smiled.
我父亲和母亲都笑了。

- ★ I can't breathe in the clothes.
衣服太紧了，我无法呼吸。

超级绕口令

I thought a thought but the thought I thought
wasn't the thought I thought I thought.

我思考一个问题。但是，我所思考的问题并不是我认为我所思考的问题。

Thank the other three brothers of their
father's mother's brother's side.

谢谢他们奶奶的哥哥的其他三个表亲兄弟。

摩擦辅音 /θ/



单词代言

thin	/θɪn/	<i>a.</i>	瘦的
math	/mæθ/	<i>n.</i>	数学
breath	/breθ/	<i>n.</i>	呼吸
birth	/bɜ:θ/	<i>v.</i>	出生
faith	/feɪθ/	<i>n.</i>	信仰
theme	/θi:m/	<i>n.</i>	主题
thief	/θɪ:f/	<i>n.</i>	贼
thank	/θæŋk/	<i>v.</i>	谢谢
thirty	/'θɜ:ti/	<i>num.</i>	三十
ethnic	/'eθnik/	<i>a.</i>	种族的
thick	/θɪk/	<i>a.</i>	厚的；浓的
method	/'meθəd/	<i>n.</i>	方法，办法
toothpaste	/'tu:θpeɪst/	<i>n.</i>	牙膏
nothing	/'nʌθɪŋ/	<i>pron.</i>	什么也没有
health	/helθ/	<i>n.</i>	卫生保健，健康
think	/θɪŋk/	<i>v.</i>	想；想要；认为

短语代言

the Fifth Avenue	第五大道
deep breath	深呼吸
birth control	计划生育
think up	想出, 发明
ethnic group	少数民族
thousands of	成千上万的
for nothing	免费, 白白地
healthy thought	健康的思想

句子代言

- ★ Something is better than nothing.
聊胜于无。
- ★ Good health is above wealth .
无病就是富。
- ★ How do you think of Cathy?
你认为凯西怎么样?
- ★ I think you should thank him.
我认为你应该感谢他。

超级绕口令

Nothing is worth thousands of deaths.

不值得死数千次。

I thought a thought but the thought I thought was not the thought I thought. If the thought I thought had been the thought I thought ,I would not have thought so much.

我有一个想法，但是我的这个想法不是我曾经想到的那个想法。如果这个想法是我曾经想到的那个想法，我就不会想那么多了。

摩擦辅音 /h/

MP3 035

单词代言

h elp	/help/	v.	帮助
h oliday	/'hɒlɪdɪ/	n.	假日
h ouse	/haus/	n.	房屋
h urt	/hɜ:t/	v.	伤害
h ot	/hɒt/	a.	热的
h at	/hæt/	n.	帽子
h ere	/hɪə/	ad.	这里
h ard	/hɑ:d/	ad.	努力地
h ow	/haʊ/	ad.	怎样
h is	/hɪz/	pron.	他的
child h ood	/tʃaɪldhʊd/	n.	童年
share h older	/'ʃeə.həʊldə/	n.	股东
h edge	/hedʒ/	n.	树篱; 障碍物
per h aps	/pə'hæps/	ad.	也许, 可能
h ello	/hə'ləʊ/	v.	喂(表示问候)
h ealth	/helθ/	n.	卫生保健, 健康

短语代言

hand in hand	手拉手
first catch your hare	稍安勿躁
half-hearted	缺乏热情的
hope for help	希望帮助
hear by herself	她亲耳听到
hear about	听到，听说
with hat in hand	手里拿着帽子
hot news	最新新闻，热闻

句子代言

- ★ Harm set, harm get.
自作自受。

- ★ He, who has an art, has everywhere a part.
一招鲜，吃遍天。

- ★ Her husband is hard-working.
她丈夫工作很努力。

- ★ Human pride is human's weakness.
骄傲是人类的弱点。

超级绕口令

He thrusts his fists against the posts and still
insists he sees the ghosts.

他用拳头猛力推打柱子，并且声称他见到了鬼。

Her whole right hand really hurts.

她的整个右手确实很痛。

摩擦辅音 /r/



036

单词代言

r ain	/reɪn/	v.	下雨
r at	/ræt/	n.	老鼠
r ipe	/raɪp/	a.	成熟的
p ride	/praɪd/	n.	骄傲
r ight	/raɪt/	a.	对的
r ise	/raɪz/	v.	升起
c ry	/kraɪ/	v.	哭，喊
g reen	/grɪ:n/	a.	绿色的
b read	/bred/	n.	面包
c rime	/kraɪm/	n.	罪行
n arrow	/'nærəʊ/	a.	狭窄的
g rass	/grɑ:s/	n.	草，草地
b rown	/braʊn/	n.	棕色的
r eally	/'riəli/	ad.	真正地
s tereo	/'stiəriəʊ/	n.	立体声音响
s orry	/'sɒri/	a.	难过的；对不起的

短语代言

right away	立即，马上
self pride	自尊
heavy rain	大雨，暴雨
right or wrong	对或错
a red rose	一朵红玫瑰
really busy	真的很忙
rather correct	相当正确
in a rat race	在一场激烈的竞争中

句子代言

- ★ Roy rushed into the room.
罗伊冲进屋子。
- ★ Everything goes wrong on Friday.
星期五那天，一切都变了。
- ★ Reed is riding a red horse.
里德骑着一匹红色的马。
- ★ Ready money is the ready medicine.
现成的资金相当于现成的药。

超级绕口令

Ruby Rugby's brother bought and brought
her back some rubber baby-buggy bumpers.

鲁比·勒比的哥哥买了一些婴儿推车的橡胶保险杠回来给她。

Real weird rear wheels.

真正怪异的后轮。

Robin Redbreast's bad breath.

罗宾的知更鸟的难闻的气味。

3. 破擦辅音 /tr/ /dr/ /ts/ /dz/ /tʃ/ /dʒ/

破擦辅音 /tr/

MP3 037

单词代言

t rack	/træk/	n.	跑道
t rick	/trɪk/	n.	诡计
t raffic	/'træfɪk/	n.	交通
e xtra	/'ekstrə/	a.	额外的
t runk	/trʌŋk/	n.	行李箱
t rip	/trɪp/	n.	旅行
t rain	/treɪn/	n.	火车
t ree	/tri:/	n.	树
t reat	/tri:t/	v.	对待
mat t ress	/'mætrɪs/	n.	床垫
en t rance	/'entrəns/	n.	入口
coun t ry	/'kʌntri/	n.	国家
t ransport	/træn'spɔ:t/	v.	运送
t ricycle	/'traɪsɪkl/	n.	三轮车
dis t rust	/dɪs'trʌst/	n.&vt.	不信任
t rap	/træp/	v.	陷入

短语代言

tell the truth	告诉真实情况
another try	另一次尝试
get into trouble	陷入麻烦
dist trust of	不相信
foreign trade	对外贸易
ext ra long	特大，特长
travel by train	乘火车旅行
retail trade	零售业

句子代言

- ★ Strike while the iron is hot!
趁热打铁！

- ★ He tried to cut down the tree.
他试图把树砍倒。

- ★ They are trapped in the trouble.
他们陷于困境之中。

- ★ We try to build an industrial country.
我们努力建设一个工业化国家。

超级绕口令

The tacky tractor trailers trucks.

破烂的拖拉机是用来拖卡车的。

破擦辅音 /dr/



单词代言

d rink	/drɪŋk/	v.	喝
d rawer	/'drɔ:ə/	n.	抽屉
d rought	/draʊt/	n.	干旱
d rain	/dreɪn/	v.	耗尽
d rama	/'drɑ:mə/	n.	戏剧
d rill	/drɪl/	v.	钻孔
d rop	/drɒp/	v.	摔下
d ream	/dri:m/	n.	梦想
d rily	/'drɪli/	ad.	冷淡地
d rainage	/'dreɪnɪdʒ/	n.	排水
hundred	/'hʌndrəd/	n.	百
hair d resser	/'heədresə/	n.	理发师
laun d ry	/'lə:ndri/	n.	洗衣店
d rift	/drɪft/	v.	漂动, 漂流
d readful	/'dredfəl/	a.	可怕的, 一团糟

短语代言

sweet d ream	美梦
d rive the car	开车
d rag one's feet	故意拖延
d rink up	喝干净
d rought damage	干旱灾害
d rop up	顺路拜访
d ripping d rops	滴下的水滴
hund d reds of	成百，许多

句子代言

- ★ No driving after drinking.
禁止酒后开车。
- ★ He dressed up as a drummer.
他打扮成一个鼓手。
- ★ I dreamed of driving .
我梦到在开车。
- ★ Hundreds of drivers gathered here.
这里聚集了数百名司机。

超级绕口令

The driver was drunk and drove the doctor's
car directly into the deep ditch.

司机喝醉了，驾驶着医生的车直接冲到了深沟里。

The drummers drummed.

鼓手敲鼓。

破擦辅音 /ts/



单词代言

hearts	/hɑ:ts/	<i>n.</i> 中心
seats	/si:ts/	<i>n.</i> 座位
fruits	/fru:ts/	<i>n.</i> 水果
hits	/hits/	<i>v.</i> 打击
flights	/flaɪts/	<i>n.</i> 航班
gets	/gets/	<i>v.</i> 得到
guests	/gests/	<i>n.</i> 客人
lights	/laɪts/	<i>n.</i> 光; 明亮
streets	/'stri:ts/	<i>n.</i> 街道
nights	/naɪts/	<i>n.</i> 夜晚
reports	/ri'pɔ:ts/	<i>n.</i> 记录
parents	/'peərənts/	<i>n.</i> 父母
lots	/lɒts/	<i>n.</i> 许多, 大量
shots	/ʃɒts/	<i>v.</i> 发射; 射击声
documents	/'dɒkjumənts/	<i>n.</i> 文件
candidates	/'kændɪdeɪts/	<i>n.</i> 候选人

短语代言

go nuts	发疯
in the streets	在街上
eats fruits	吃水果
lots of	许多
lots of seats	很多座位
three cats	三只猫
do reports	做报告
many nights	很多个夜晚

句子代言

- ★ The students have lots of cats.
学生们有很多猫。

- ★ The dentists are reading digests.
牙医们在读文摘。

- ★ One of the dentists treats me very well.
其中一个牙医对我很好。

- ★ He often meets many bats at night.
他夜晚经常会碰到成群的蝙蝠。

超级绕口令

A box of biscuits, a box of mixed biscuits.
Bob bought three boxes of biscuits and two
boxes of mixed biscuits.

一盒饼干，一盒混合饼干。鲍勃买了三
盒饼干和两盒混合饼干。

破擦辅音 /dz/



单词代言

deeds	/di:dz/	<i>n.</i> 事迹
holds	/həʊldz/	<i>v.</i> 举行
hands	/hændz/	<i>n.</i> 手
reads	/ri:dz/	<i>v.</i> 读
feeds	/fi:dz/	<i>v.</i> 喂养
seeds	/si:dz/	<i>n.</i> 种子
friends	/frendz/	<i>n.</i> 朋友
goods	/gʊdz/	<i>n.</i> 商品
roads	/rəʊdz/	<i>n.</i> 马路
sands	/sændz/	<i>n.</i> 沙子
inlands	/'ɪnləndz/	<i>a.</i> 国内的
standards	/'stændədz/	<i>n.</i> 标准
demands	/di'mɑ:ndz/	<i>v.</i> 要求；需要
spends	/spendz/	<i>v.</i> 用钱，花费；度过
bands	/bændz/	<i>n.</i> 乐队；带；波段
stands	/stændz/	<i>v.</i> 站；坐落； <i>n.</i> 架，台

短语代言

several pounds	一些英镑
floor stands	支架
make friends	做朋友
competitive demands	竞争性，需求
several brands	几个品牌
my friends	我的朋友
comfortable beds	舒适的床
community standards	公共道德标准

句子代言

- ★ Please go straight towards the roads.
请径直向公路走吧。
- ★ He played cards with his friends.
他和朋友们玩扑克牌。
- ★ We should protect all kinds of birds.
我们应该保护各种鸟类。
- ★ He stands there with books in hand.
他站在那里，手里拿着书。

超级绕口令

Edward's seeds are in that child's hands.

爱德华的种子在那个孩子的手里。

破擦辅音 /tʃ/



单词代言

cheap	/tʃi:p/	<i>a.</i>	便宜的
nature	/'neɪtʃə/	<i>n.</i>	自然
church	/tʃɜ:tʃ/	<i>n.</i>	教堂
each	/i:tʃ/	<i>a.</i>	每一
lunch	/lʌntʃ/	<i>n.</i>	午餐
inch	/ɪntʃ/	<i>n.</i>	英寸
chicken	/'tʃɪkən/	<i>n.</i>	小鸡
chief	/tʃi:f/	<i>a.</i>	主要的
question	/'kwɛstʃən/	<i>n.</i>	问题
chairman	/'tʃeəmən/	<i>n.</i>	主席
which	/wɪtʃ/	<i>pron.</i>	哪个
lecture	/'lektʃə/	<i>n.</i>	演讲, 讲课
coach	/kəʊtʃ/	<i>n.</i>	大巴, 教练
actually	/'æktʃʊəli/	<i>ad.</i>	事实上
suggestion	/sə'dʒestʃən/	<i>n.</i>	建议; 暗示
exchange	/ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/	<i>n.</i>	交换; 兑换

短语代言

chat over lunch	午餐时聊天
catch at	试图抓
catch with chaff	轻易地欺骗
by chance	偶然，碰巧
by nature	天生地，生来
free of charge	不收费
check in	登记入住
every inch	彻底，各方面

句子代言

- ★ The chairman is changing his gestures.
会长在变换着他的手势。

- ★ This is a Chinese's choice.
这是一个中国人的选择。

- ★ China has a big change.
中国有了很大的变化。

- ★ A stitch in time saves nine.
及时行事，事半功倍。

超级绕口令

The chief chief chewed the cheap cheese.

首席长官咀嚼着便宜的奶酪。

破擦辅音 /dʒ/



单词代言

edge	/edʒ/	<i>n.</i> 边缘
imagine	/ɪ'mædʒɪn/	<i>v.</i> 想象
jewel	/'dʒu:əl/	<i>n.</i> 宝石
ridge	/rɪdʒ/	<i>n.</i> 山脊
adjust	/ə'dʒʌst/	<i>v.</i> 调整
jeans	/dʒi:nz/	<i>n.</i> 牛仔裤
urgent	/'ɜ:dʒənt/	<i>a.</i> 紧要的
jug	/dʒʌg/	<i>n.</i> 壶, 大罐
fragile	/'frædʒaɪl/	<i>a.</i> 易碎的
general	/'dʒenərəl/	<i>a.</i> 一般的
manager	/'mænɪdʒə/	<i>n.</i> 经理
language	/'læŋgwɪdʒ/	<i>n.</i> 语言
dangerous	/'deɪndʒərəs/	<i>a.</i> 危险的
procedure	/prə'sɪ:dʒə/	<i>n.</i> 程序
suggestion	/sə'dʒestʃən/	<i>n.</i> 建议, 意见
judge	/dʒʌdʒ/	<i>v.</i> 判断; <i>n.</i> 法官

短语代言

jump for joy	欢欣鼓舞
General Consul	总领事
join in the jury	加入陪审团
urgent care	紧急护理
traffic jam	交通阻塞
play jokes	开玩笑
an aged judge	一位年长的法官
general speaking	整体来说

句子代言

- ★ The judge is very gentle.
这个法官非常绅士。
- ★ Jim's jacket is overlarge.
吉米的夹克太大了。
- ★ Every Jack shall have his Jill.
有情人终成眷属。
- ★ Do you like Jack's Jazz music?
你喜欢杰克的爵士乐吗？

超级绕口令

Can you imagine an imaginary menagerie manager imagining managing an imaginary menagerie?

你可以想象一个虚构的野生动物园经理幻想管理一个虚构的野生动物园吗？

James the jailer changed jail's chairs and chained the chairs to the jail.

狱卒詹姆士换了监狱里的椅子并把椅子拴在牢房上。

4. 鼻辅音 /m/ /n/ /ŋ/

鼻辅音 /m/

MP3 043

单词代言

m ay	/meɪ/	<i>aux.</i>	也许
dream m	/dri:m/	<i>n.</i>	梦想
m any	/'meni/	<i>a.</i>	许多
m anner	/'mænə/	<i>n.</i>	方式
m onster	/'mɒnstə/	<i>n.</i>	怪物
en m y	/'eni:mi/	<i>n.</i>	敌人
m orning	/'mɔ:nɪŋ/	<i>n.</i>	早上
m iddle	/'mɪdl/	<i>a.</i>	中等的
m emory	/'meməri/	<i>n.</i>	记忆
su m mer	/'sʌmə/	<i>n.</i>	夏, 夏季
fa m ily	/'fæmɪli/	<i>n.</i>	家, 家庭
m emorise	/'meməraɪz/	<i>v.</i>	记住
im m igrant	/'ɪmɪgrənt/	<i>n.</i>	移民
m ine	/maɪn/	<i>pron.</i>	我的(东西)
exa m	/ɪg'zæm/	<i>v.</i>	检查; <i>n.</i> 考试
com m pletely	/kəm'pli:tli/	<i>ad.</i>	完全地, 彻底

短语代言

at the moment	此刻
dream catcher	追梦人
middle class	中产阶级
make me mad	让我疯狂
table manner	餐桌礼仪
the man in the moon	虚构的人
come home	回家
a man of mark	著名人士，卓越人物

句子代言

- ★ The milk man is murmuring.
送奶工在喃喃自语。

- ★ A maiden must be mild and meek.
少女应温良谦顺。

- ★ A miss is as good as a mile.
失之毫厘，差之千里。

- ★ Mike likes romantic films.
迈克喜欢爱情片。

超级绕口令

Mommy made me eat the meat.

妈妈要我吃肉。

Mix, Miss Mix!

密斯，密斯小姐！

Moose is noshing much mush.

慕斯吃了很多玉米粥。

Mrs. Smith's Fish Sauce Shop.

史密斯太太的鱼酱店。

鼻辅音 /n/



044

单词代言

n arrow	/'nærəʊ/	<i>a.</i>	狭窄的
n ine	/'naɪn/	<i>n.</i>	九
k now	/'nəʊ/	<i>v.</i>	知道
l earn	/'lɜ:n/	<i>v.</i>	学，学习
h onor	/'ɒnə/	<i>n.</i>	荣誉
n ot	/'nɒt/	<i>ad.</i>	不是
n ote	/'nəʊt/	<i>n.</i>	笔记本
s eason	/'si:zn/	<i>n.</i>	季节
s niff	/'snɪf/	<i>v.</i>	吸，闻
l esson	/'lesn/	<i>n.</i>	课程
n eighbour	/'neɪbə/	<i>n.</i>	邻居
f inish	/'fɪnɪʃ/	<i>v.</i>	完成，结束
w arn	/'wɔ:n/	<i>v.</i>	警告，告诫
d ance	/'dɑ:ns/	<i>v.</i>	跳舞；摇晃
s urrounding	/'sə'raʊndɪŋ/	<i>n.</i>	周围的事物
e vent	/'ɪvent/	<i>n.</i>	事件，大事；比赛项目



短语代言

no need to know	没必要知道
kind of	有点
national park	国家公园
narrow road	窄路
hand in hand	手拉手
run against	碰上，撞上
team event	集体项目
next number	下一个号码

句子代言

★ Nobody knows how to find Nina.

没有人知道如何找到妮娜。

★ Anny is learning another course.

安妮正在学习另外一门课。

★ No answer is also an answer.

没有回答也是一种答案。

★ Sit in the shade instead of in the sun.

坐在阴凉处，别坐在太阳底下。

超级绕口令

Nine nice night nurses are nursing nicely.

九位友善的夜班护士愉快地照料病人。

Nina never knew her new neighbor Nero
knew her.

尼娜从不知道她的新邻居尼洛认识她。

鼻辅音 /ŋ/

单词代言

spring	/sprɪŋ/	<i>n.</i>	弹簧
long	/lɒŋ/	<i>a.</i>	长的
thank	/θæŋk/	<i>v.</i>	谢谢
feeling	/'fi:lɪŋ/	<i>n.</i>	感觉
evening	/'i:vniŋ/	<i>n.</i>	晚上
trunk	/trʌŋk/	<i>n.</i>	行李箱
morning	/'mɔ:nɪŋ/	<i>n.</i>	早上
England	/'ɪŋɡlənd/	<i>n.</i>	英国
pink	/pɪŋk/	<i>a.</i>	粉红色的
following	/'fɒləʊɪŋ/	<i>a.</i>	下一个
language	/'læŋɡwɪdʒ/	<i>n.</i>	语言
English	/'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/	<i>n.</i>	英语, 英国人
nothing	/'nʌθɪŋ/	<i>pron.</i>	什么也没有
think	/θɪŋk/	<i>v.</i>	想; 想要
shrink	/ʃrɪŋk/	<i>vi.</i>	收缩; 畏缩

短语代言

sing a song	唱首歌
evening edition	晚报
nothing wrong	没什么错的
long lasting	持久，持久性
the coming spring	即将到来的春天
surrounding atmosphere	四周气氛
nothing doing	不行，办不到
a long shopping list	一张长长的购物单

句子代言

- ★ She is crying in the morning.
今天早上她在哭。
- ★ They are doing nothing now.
他们现在无所事事。
- ★ He is walking along the long river.
他沿着长长的河流走着。
- ★ To read without reflecting is like eating without digesting.
学而不思就如食而不化。

超级绕口令

Just think, the sphinx has a sphincter that stinks!

试想想，那个狮身人面像的括约肌发臭了。

He thanked the king for the things the king had done for him.

他感谢国王为他所做的事。

5. 舌侧音 /l/

舌侧音 /l/



单词代言

little	/'lɪtl/	a.	少量的
salary	/'sæləri/	n.	薪水
low	/ləʊ/	a.	低的
ill	/ɪl/	a.	病的
learn	/lɜ:n/	v.	学，学习
flood	/flʌd/	n.	水灾
dealer	/'di:lə/	n.	商人
full	/fʊl/	a.	充满的
travel	/'trævəl/	v.	旅行
ladder	/'lædə/	n.	阶梯
manual	/'mænjʊəl/	n.	手册指南
loyal	/'lɔɪəl/	a.	忠诚的
yellow	/'jeləʊ/	a.	黄色的
light	/laɪt/	n.	光；a. 明亮的
dreadful	/'dredfəl/	a.	可怕的，一团糟
intensely	/ɪn'tensli/	adv.	激烈地；热切地

短语代言

slight light	微弱的光
full shot	全景
get lost	迷路
fall ill	犯病，病倒
silent sleep	安静的睡眠
manual control	人工控制
give me a lift	让我搭一下车
flood season	汛期

句子代言

- ★ It's no use crying over spilt milk.
覆水难收。
- ★ Like will find like.
物以类聚。
- ★ The lady lives alone.
这位夫人独自生活。
- ★ That tall girl has long legs.
那个高个子女孩有一双长腿。

超级绕口令

Lily ladles little Letty's lentilsoup .

莉莉替小历蒂盛小扁豆汤。

Listen to the local yokel yodel.

听听那个本地土包子唱的岳德尔调。

Lovely lemon liniment.

可爱的柠檬搽剂。

6. 半元音 /j/ /w/

半元音 /j/



单词代言

yoga	/'jəʊgə/	n.	瑜伽
yes	/jes/	adv.	是的
you	/ju:/	pron.	你
yet	/jet/	ad.	还, 仍
yard	/jɑ:d/	n.	码
young	/jʌŋ/	a.	年轻的
lawyer	/'lɔ:jə/	n.	律师
yell	/jel/	v.	大叫, 喊叫
yogurt	/'jɒgət/	n.	酸奶
yield	/ji:ld/	v.	屈服, 投降
yellow	/'jeləu/	a.	黄色的
brilliant	/'brɪljənt/	a.	精彩的
youth	/ju:θ/	n.	青年, 青春
yawn	/jɔ:n/	v.	打哈欠, 裂开
union	/'ju:njən/	n.	工会, 联盟
yesterday	/'jestədi/	n.	昨天, 昨日

短语代言

year after year	年复一年
tune in	收听
fresh yogurt	新鲜的酸奶
continue cooperation	继续合作
at yet	至今
a young woman	一个年轻的女子
yield to	让步
yell at you	冲你大声喊叫

句子代言

- ★ She was't born yesterday.
她很有经验。

- ★ Young people like new year.
年轻人喜欢过年。

- ★ No news is good news.
没有消息就是好消息。

- ★ Stop yawning in my class.
在我的课堂上不许打哈欠。

超级绕口令

A lusty lady loved a lawyer and longed to lure him from his laboratory .

一个精力充沛的女士爱上了一个律师，她渴望诱惑律师离开实验室，投入他的怀抱。

The yellow bird has yelled for many years in the yard of Yale.

那只黄色羽毛的鸟儿在耶鲁大学的校园里歌唱了好多年了。

半元音 /w/



048

单词代言

swim	/swim/	v.	游泳
away	/ə'weɪ/	adv.	离去
choir	/kwaɪə/	n.	唱诗班
sway	/sweɪ/	v.	摇摆
west	/west/	n.	西方
we	/wi:/	pron.	我们
which	/wɪtʃ/	pron.	哪个
why	/waɪ/	conj.	为什么
twice	/twɑɪs/	ad.	两倍，两次
week	/wi:k/	n.	一周，星期
whisper	/'wɪspə/	n.	窃窃私语
wash	/wɒʃ/	v.	洗；冲出；洗涤
wait	/weɪt/	v.	等，等候；等待
war	/wɔ:/	n.	战争；冲突，斗争
swallow	/'swɒləʊ/	vt.	吞，咽；轻信
quiet	/'kwaɪət/	a.	安静的，平静的

短语代言

water the w heat	灌溉小麦
wait on	服侍
walk for w ard	向前走
t wice over	两倍
w ithin four w alls	私下里，机密的
welcome w armly	热情欢迎
car w ash	洗车台，洗车处
w arm w eather	温暖的天气

句子代言

- ★ No sweet without sweat.
幸福来自汗水。
- ★ I waited for weeks.
我等了几周。
- ★ We are going to sell wheel chairs.
我们准备卖轮椅。
- ★ What will you do on weekends?
你周末打算做什么？

超级绕口令

While we were walking, we were watching
window washers wash Washington's
windows with warm washing water.

当我们走路时，我们看着清洁窗户的人
用暖水清洗华盛顿的窗户。

We surely shall see the sun shine soon.

我们毕竟将快看见阳光。

第二部分

初有成效：掌握发音奥妙



字母及字母组合 的发音奥秘



元音字母及字母组合的发音

英语共有26个字母，其中A-a, E-e, I-i, O-o, U-u是元音字母。因为字母y在词首是辅音字母，在词中和词尾是元音字母，语音学家根据它同时具有两种读音的性质，把它定为半元音字母。我们在讲元音字母及元音字母组合，辅音字母及辅音字母组合时都要讲到y的读音。

开音节的定义：

①绝对开音节：单个元音字母后面没有辅音字母的重读音节，例如：**no, blue, ba-by, stu-dent, se-cret.**

②相对开音节：单个元音字母后面加单个辅音字母，再加一个不发音字母e构成的重读音节，例如：**name, these, bike, home, ex-**

cuse。

闭音节的定义：

以一个或几个辅音字母（**rp**除外）结尾，而中间只有一个元音字母的音节。例如：**bag, egg, fish, not, cup**。

一、元音字母在重读音节中的读音

A-a在开音节中读/eɪ/，例如：

name, plane, Jane, baby, cake

A-a在闭音节中读/æ/，例如：

bag, dad, hat, map, black, back

E-e在开音节中读/i:/，例如：

he, these, me, Chinese

E-e在闭音节中读/e/，例如：

bed, let, pen, desk, yes, egg

I-i在开音节中读/aɪ/，例如：

bike, drive, time, nice, kite

I-i在闭音节中读/ɪ/，例如：

fish, big, drink, sit, milk, swim

O-o在开音节中读/əʊ/, 例如:

those, close, go, hoe, home, no

O-o在闭音节中读/ɒ/, 例如:

clock, not, box, shop, sock

U-u在开音节中读/ju:/, 例如:

student, excuse, duty, Tuesday

U-u在闭音节中读/ʌ/, 例如:

bus, cup, jump, much, lunch

在开音节中, 元音字母u在辅音字母j, l, r后面时读/u:/音, 例如: June, blue, ruler。

二、元音字母在非重读音节中的读音

A-a 读/ə/, 例如: China, another, woman, breakfast

读/ɪ/, 例如: orange, comrade, village, cabbage

E-e 读/ə/, 例如: hundred, student, open,

week**e**nd

读/ɪ/, 例如: chick**e**n, pocket, beg**i**n

I-i 读/ɪ/, 例如: pol**i**ce, inst**i**tute,
fam**i**ly, anim**a**l

读/aɪ/, 例如: exerc**i**se, satell**i**te

O-o 读/ə/, 例如: sec**o**nd, t**o**night,
someb**o**dy, welc**o**me

读/əʊ/, 例如: als**o**, zero**o**, phot**o**

U-u 读/ə/, 例如: aut**u**mn, diffic**u**lt

读/ju:/, 例如: pop**u**lar, congrat**u**lation,
Jan**u**ary

三、元音字母在重读音节中的特殊读音

A-a在/w/音后面读/ɒ/, 例如: w**a**nt, wh**a**t,
w**a**tch, w**a**sh, qual**a**lity; 在f、n、sk、ph、sp、ss、
st、th前读/a:/, 例如: **a**fter, pl**a**nt, gr**a**ph, **a**sk,
gr**a**sp, gl**a**ss, f**a**st, f**a**ther

I-i在-nd、-ld和gh前读/ai/, 例如: f**i**nd,
ch**i**ld, l**i**ght, h**i**gh

O-o在-st、-ld前读/əʊ/, 例如: most, postcard, old, cold; 在m、n、v、th前读/ʌ/, 例如: come, monkey, love, mother

四、-r在重读音节中的读音

ar读/a:/, 例如: car, farm, dark, sharpener; 在/w/音后面读ɔ:/, 例如: warm, quarter, towards

or读ɔ:/, 例如: forty, morning, short; 在/w/音后面读ə:/, 例如: word, worker, worse

er, ir, ur读ə:/, 例如: certainly, bird, Thursday

辅音字母r双写时, 前面的元音字母不能与r构成-r音节, 而是按重读闭音节的拼读规则发音, 例如: carry, sorry, hurry。

-r音节在非重读音节中通常读ə/音, 例如: dollar, teacher, martyr, forget, Saturday。

五、-re在重读音节中的读音

are读/eə/, 例如: **care**, **dare**, **hare**

ere读/ɪə/, 例如: **here**, **mere**

ire读/aɪə/, 例如: **fire**, **hire**, **wire**

ore读/ɔ:/, 例如: **more**, **score**, **before**

ure读/jʊ:ə/, 例如: **pure**, **cure**

are, ere, ire, ore很少出现在非重读音节中, ure在非重读音节中读/ə/音, 例如: **picture**, **pleasure**。

六、元音组合在重读音节中的读音

ai/ay读/eɪ/, 例如: **afraid**, **rain**, **wait**, **day**, **play**

air读/eə/, 例如: **air**, **hair**, **chair**, **pair**, **repair**

al读/ɒ/, 例如: **small**, **ball**, **talk**, **wall**, **all**; 读/ɔ:l/, 例如: **always**, **also**, **salt**, **almost**, **bald**; 读/a:/, 例如: **half**, **calm**

au/aw读/ɔ:/, 例如: **autumn**, **daughter**,
draw

ea读/i:/, 例如: **teach**, **easy**, **cheap**,
please; 读/e/, 例如: **heavy**, **bread**, **sweater**,
weather; 读/eɪ/, 例如: **break**, **great**

ear读/ɪə/, 例如: **hear**, **dear**, **near**,
clear, **year**; 读/eə/, 例如: **bear**, **pear**, **wear**;
读/ə:/, 例如: **earth**, **learn**, **early**

ee读/i:/, 例如: **jeep**, **week**, **green**, **three**

eer读/ɪə/, 例如: **pioneer**, **deer**, **beer**

ei/ey读/eɪ/, 例如: **eight**, **neighbour**,
they; 读/i:/, 例如: **either**, **key**

eu/ew读/ju:/, 例如: **new**, **few**, **newspaper**;
在j、l、r、s后读/u:/, 例如: **flew**, **brew**

ie读/i:/, ei在/s/音之后读/i:/, 例如: **piece**,
field, **receive**

oa读/əʊ/, 例如: **coat**, **Joan**, **boat**, **goal**

oar/oor读/ɔ:/, 例如: **roar**, **board**, **door**,

floor

oi/oy 读 /ɔɪ/, 例如: **n**oise, **p**oint, **b**oy,

toilet

oo 读 /u:/, 例如: **b**room, **f**ood, **t**ooth,
school; 读 /ʊ/, 例如: **b**ook, **l**ook, **c**ook, **f**oot,

good

ou/ow 读 /aʊ/, 例如: **f**lower, **h**ouse,
count, **d**own; 读 /əʊ/, 例如: **k**now, **r**ow,
throw, **t**hough; 读 /ʌ/, 例如: **y**oung, **c**ountry,
enough; 读 /ʊ:/, 例如: **g**roup, **y**ou, **s**oup

our 读 /ɔ:/, 例如: **c**ourse, **y**our, **f**our; 读
 /aʊə/, 例如: **o**ur, **h**our, **o**urs

ui 读 /jʊ:ɪ/, 例如: **f**luid, **s**uicide, **t**uition;
 在 j、l、r、s 后读 /u:/, 例如: **j**uice, **f**ruit, **s**uit

七、非重读音节中元音组合的读音

-ai/ay, -ei/ey 读 /ɪ/, 例如: **S**und**a**y,
fore**e**ign, **m**on**k**e**y**

-ow 读 /əʊ/, 例如: yellow, sparrow,
tomorrow

-sion, -tion 读 /ʃn/, 例如: impression,
nation

-sion 在元音字母后读 /ʒn/, 例如: vision,
decision, occasion

-tion 在 s 后读 /tʃən/, 例如: question,
suggestion

-sten 读 /sn/, 例如: listen

-stle 读 /sl/, 例如: whistle

-sure 读 /ʒə/, 例如: pleasure, measure

-ture 读 /tʃə/, 例如: picture, culture

辅音字母及字母组合的发音

B-b 读 /b/, 例如: bike, bus, bag

不发音, 例如: bomb, tomb

C-c 读 /k/, 例如: cake, picture, coat, music

在e前或在i/y前读/s/, 例如: fa**ce**,
dec**ide**, **cinema**

ch 读/tʃ/, 例如: mu**ch**, **chick**, **rich**,
teach**er**

读/k/, 例如: s**ch**ool, headac**h**e,
chemistry

读ʃ/, 例如: mach**ine**

ck 读/k/, 例如: **cock**, **pocket**, **black**,
knock

D-d 读/d/, 例如: **doctor**, **bread**, **hand**, **day**

-dge 读/dʒ/, 例如: brid**ge**, frid**ge**

dr- 读/dr/, 例如: child**ren**, **driver**, **drink**

F-f 读/f/, 例如: **five**, **four**, break**fast**

G-g 读/g/, 例如: **bag**, **garden**, **gg**

在ei/y前读/dʒ/, 例如: orang**e**, larg**e**,
German

gh 读/f/, 例如: cou**gh**, enoug**h**

不发音, 例如: **light**, daugh**ter**, **high**

gu 读 /g/, 例如: **g**uess, lea**g**ue,
dialog**ue**

在非重读音节中读 /gw/, 例如: lang**ue**age
an**g**uish

H-h 读 /h/, 例如: **h**ot, **h**ead, **h**ouse, **h**and
不发音, 例如: **h**our, **h**onest

J-j 读 /dʒ/, 例如: **j**ee**p**, **j**ar, **j**oke, **j**oin, **J**uly

K-k 读 /k/, 例如: **k**ind, **k**ite, **s**ka**k**e, ma**k**e,
wee**k**

kn- 读 /n/, 例如: **kn**ife, **kn**ow, **kn**ock

L-l 读 /l/, 例如: **l**ife, mil**k**, schoo**l**, ta**l**

M-m 读 /m/, 例如: **m**onkey, come

mn 读 /m/, 例如: autu**mn**, colum**n**

N-n 读 /n/, 例如: **n**ot, shi**n**e, te**n**, **n**ote

在 /k/ /g/ 音前读 /ŋ/, 例如: un**cl**e, tha**nk**,
hun**gr**y

ng 读 /ŋ/, 例如: morn**ing**, you**ng**,
wro**ng**

P-p 读/p/, 例如: **p**aper, **p**lane, **p**ig, ship,
pen

ph 读/f/, 例如: ele**ph**ant, **ph**oto,
tele**ph**one

Q-q 读/k/, 例如: Ira**q**

qu- 读/kw/, 例如: **qu**ality, **qu**ite

R-r 读/r/, 例如: **r**ed, **r**ubber, **r**uler

S-s 在词首或清辅音前读/s/, 例如: **s**it,
sleep, **des**k

在元音字母间或浊辅音前读/z/, 例如:
music, **h**usband

sc- 读/sk/, 例如: **s**carlet

读/s/, 例如: **m**uscle, **s**cience

sh 读/ʃ/, 例如: **s**he, **f**ish, **s**hirt, **w**ash

T-t 在通常情况下读/t/, 例如: **t**en, **l**etter,
meet

在弱读字母ia, ie, io前读/ʃ/, 例如:
patient, **n**ation

tch 读/tʃ/, 例如: **watch**

th 在通常情况下读/θ/, 例如: **thin**,
thirty, **method**

在冠词、代词、介词、连词中读/ð/, 例如:
the, **these**, **with**

在词尾-the, -ther中读/ð/, 例如: **clothe**,
father, **weather**

tr- 读/tr/, 例如: **tree**, **train**, **country**,
truck

V-v 读/v/, 例如: **very**, **voice**, **love**, **leave**

W-w 读/w/, 例如: **week**, **win**, **wake**, **sweet**,
wait

不发音, 例如: **answer**, **two**

wh- 读/w/, 例如: **what**, **when**, **white**,
why

在字母o前读/h/, 例如: **who**, **whose**,
whole

X-x 读/ks/, 例如: **box**, **text**, **exercise**

在重读元音前读/gz/, 例如: **ex**ample,
exist, **ex**act

wr- 读/r/, 例如: **w**rite

y- 读/j/, 例如: **y**es, **y**ard, **y**ellow, **y**oung

z 读/z/, 例如: **p**uzzle, **z**ero, **z**oo



准确朗读单词 的6大秘诀



秘诀1：单词的连读

连读一般发生在同一意群（即意思密切的一组词）中，这一规律同汉语的连读与停顿情况完全相像。连读时，一个单词的末尾经常和下一个词的开头连起来一起读。如：first of all/fə:stɒ'v'ɔ:l/

连读规则

辅音+元音：

前一词的辅音结尾和后一词的元音开头相连，如put it on /pʊ'ti'tɒn/而不是 /put'it'ɒn/。

元音+元音：

为使说话流畅，词末元音与后一词的词首元音连读，而不停顿。如my uncle读为 /maɪ'jʌŋkl/，而不是 /maɪ'ʌŋkl/。

连接音r：



前一词是以“r”或“re”结尾，后一词以元音开头，用/r/连接两个词，如far away /fɑ:’rə’weɪ/，其他情况下r一般都不发音。

牛刀小试

come out	出来
take it off	脱下
I’m afraid	恐怕
Thank you.	谢谢。
keep off	避开
first of all	首先
not at all	不客气
Good afternoon.	下午好。
the end	结束
the accident	事故
my uncle	我的叔叔
my ears	我的耳朵
three hours	三个小时
how old	多大
how about	怎么样

go on	继续
Hurry up!	快点!
We agree.	我们同意。
for ever	永远
answer it	回答
a pair of socks	一双袜子
after all	毕竟
on your own	你自己
Cheer up!	高兴起来!

1. I am on a diet.

我正在节食。

2. Take a look at it.

看一看它。

3. I'll be back in half an hour.

我会在半小时内回来。

4. Will it take a lot of time to go to town on foot?

步行去城里是要花很多时间吗?

5. There is a pair of shoes.

有一双鞋子。

6. She has been away from her own country for a long time.

她离开自己的国家已经很长时间了。

7. Can you speak English or Russian?

你会说英语还是俄语？

8. Shall we leave at six sharp if it is convenient to you?

如果你方便的话，我们六点钟出发如何？

9. Will you please wait for a moment?

请等我一会好吗？

10. There is an apple tree in front of the house.

这个房子前面有一棵苹果树。

11. Put on your hat.

戴上你的帽子。

12. He has a lot of translation exercises to do.

他有很多翻译练习要做。

13. He takes good care of your aunt.

他把你的姨妈照顾得很好。



情景对话

A: Why were you absent yesterday?

你昨天为什么没来?

B: I had a bad cold and had to lie in bed.

我得了重感冒，不得不躺在床上。

A: How are you now?

你现在怎么样了?

B: I feel better now.

我感觉好多了。

秘诀2：单词的重音

七大特殊单词重音规则

1. 英语中派生词的重音和词根重音一致。派生词就是一些有同样词根的词。比如：**act active actively, com'pare com'parison**。

2. 带有下列后缀的词：**-ary, -ery, -ory, -ism, -ist, -mony, -ment, -ary**等，重音通常在第一个音节上。例如：

'customary, 'scientist, 'slavery, 'factory, 'realism。

3. 带下列前缀的词：a-, ab-, ac-, ad-, al-, be-, con-, de-, dis-, em-, en-, in-, mis-, re-, trans-, un-, 重音通常在第二个音节上。例如：a'bout, ab'duce, ac'cede, ad'mire, be'long, con'sult, de'tect, dis'like。

4. 带下列后缀的词：-aim, -ain, -cur, -eem, -duce, -ere, -firm, -gn, -oin, -oke, -ose, -pt, -rce, -self, -ume, 重音通常在第二个音节上。例如：con'tain, o'ccur, sin'cere, de'sign, con'firm。

5. 带下列后缀的词：-ade, -ain, -ee, -eer, -esque, -ette, -ique, -ine, -oon, 重音通常在最后一个音节上。这些词一般都是从法语中借来的词。例如：emplo'yee, an'tique, maga'zine, ci'gar, volun'teer,

gaso'line。

6. 带下列后缀的词：**-eous, -ial, -ian, -ic, -ics, -ient, -ion, -ious, -ish, -it, -liar, -sive, -tal, -uous**，重音通常在倒数第二个音节上。例如：**oc'casion, re'lation, as'tonish, de'posit, mu'sician**。

7. 但是有些派生词，比如从名词派生出来的形容词，它的重音就得发生变化，通常是后移。例如：**'science, scien'tific, 'accident, acci'dental, 'democrat, demo'cratic, 'politics, po'litical**。

秘诀3：不完全爆破

① /p/, /b/, /d/, /t/, /k/, /g/——这6个爆破音中的任何两个音素相邻时，前者发不完全爆破音（即只保留发音动作，稍微停顿一下），后者则要完全彻底地进行爆破（即正常发音）。例如：

bookkeeper	/'buk,kɪ:pə/	簿记员
------------	--------------	-----

handbag	/'hændbæg/	手提包
---------	------------	-----

blackboard	/'blækbɔ:d/	黑板
------------	-------------	----

September	/səp'tembə/	九月
-----------	-------------	----

used to	/ju:sdtu:/	习惯于
---------	------------	-----

sit down	/sit'daun/	坐下
----------	------------	----

② 爆破音 /p/, /b/, /t/, /d/, /k/, /g/ 在 /tʃ/, /dʒ/, /θ/, /ð/ 的前面时不完全爆破（即只发轻微爆破）。例如：

advance	/əd'vɑ:ns/	前进，提升
---------	------------	-------

successful	/sək'sesful/	成功的
------------	--------------	-----

picture	/'pɪktʃə/	画，图画
---------	-----------	------

object	/'ɒbdʒɪkt/	物体，目标
--------	------------	-------

③ 爆破音 /p/, /b/, /t/, /d/, /k/, /g/ 在 /m/, /n/, /l/, /s/ 的前面时不完全爆破（即只发轻微爆破）。例如：

suddenly	/'sʌdnli/	突然地
----------	-----------	-----

mostly	/'məʊstli/	主要地
--------	------------	-----

submerge	/səb'mɜ:dʒ/	浸没，淹没
----------	-------------	-------

let me	/'letmi/	让我
--------	----------	----

牛刀小试

下面是六个爆破音常见的各种搭配组合及例词，供练习不完全爆破（字母底下的横线表示失去爆破，不发音）。

-pp-	ri <u>p</u> e pear	熟梨
-pb-	soap <u>b</u> bubble	肥皂泡
-pt-	cup <u>t</u> tie	英国足球淘汰赛
-pd-	dee <u>p</u> down	深处
-pk-	pipe <u>k</u> cleaner	清洁烟斗的工具
-pg-	lamp <u>p</u> glass	灯罩
-bp-	rob <u>b</u> Peter	抢了彼得
-bb-	rub <u>b</u> briskly	迅速摩擦
-bt-	o <u>b</u> tain	获得
-bk-	Bob <u>b</u> came	鲍勃来了
-bg-	descri <u>b</u> e Green	描写格林
-tp-	wet <u>t</u> paint	油漆未干
-tt-	fast <u>t</u> train	快车
-td-	great <u>t</u> deal	许多
-tk-	not <u>t</u> clean	不干净
-tg-	white <u>t</u> e goose	白鹅
-db-	card <u>b</u> board	纸板
-dt-	good <u>d</u> time	好时光

-dd-	field <u>d</u> day	护外活动
-dk-	red <u>d</u> card	红牌
-dg-	good <u>d</u> girl	好女孩
-kp-	sil <u>k</u> purse	丝绸包
-kb-	in <u>k</u> bottle	墨水瓶
-kt-	a <u>c</u> tor	演员
-kd-	public <u>c</u> duty	公务
-kg-	par <u>k</u> gate	公园门口
-ckb-	bal <u>c</u> k book	黑色的书本
-gp-	flag <u>g</u> pole	旗杆
-gb-	dog <u>g</u> biscuit	狗食饼干
-gt-	rag <u>g</u> time	一种爵士乐节拍
-gd-	dig <u>g</u> down	往下挖
-gk-	egg <u>g</u> cup	蛋杯
-gg-	big <u>g</u> girl	大女孩

朗读下列句子，注意不完全爆破的发音

1. He has a bad cold today.

今天他得了重感冒。

2. You should take care of the children.

你应该照顾好孩子们。

3. Glad to meet you.

很高兴见到你。

4. Tom likes to talk big.

汤姆喜欢说大话。

5. I expect to join the basketball team.

我希望加入足球队。

6. Have you read the book about that child?

你曾读过关于那个孩子的书吗？

7. The third chair is broken.

第三把椅子坏了。

8. My sister has a good job.

我姐姐有一份好工作。

9. Have you heard from your father?

你收到你父亲的来信了吗？

10. She arrived home from school at nine.

她九点从学校到家。

11. Good morning, sir.

早上好，先生。

12. Good night.

晚安。

13. They are very friendly to us.

他们对我们很友好。

14. I would like a cup of tea.

我要一杯茶。

15. How long will it take me to get there?

我到那儿要多长时间？

情景对话

A: How is your granny?

你奶奶好吗？

B: She is fit as a fiddle.

她很健康。

A: Where is Mr. Lee?

李先生在哪里？

B: He is on the beach.

他在海滩上。

秘诀4：音的同化

一个音在语流中受相邻的音的影响而变得与其相像。受同化影响的音主要是辅音。它往往是造成听力理解卡壳的地方，

所以要特别重视。

如：light (p) blue

quite (k) good

in the — /ɪnnə/

get them — /gettem/

read these — /ri:ddɪ:z/

秘诀5：省音

省音是词的某一个音（或几个音）在一定的条件下完全消失的现象。省音可以分为历史省音和语境省音。

历史省音是指开始存在于一个词内的某个音在后来的词形中被省略。例如：

history /təri/ → /tri/

family /mɪli/ → /mli/

语境省音是指一个词内的某个音在这个词组成合成词或词组时被省略。例如：

just now /'dʒʌst-'naʊ/ → /'dʒʌs-'naʊ/

used to /'ju:st-'tu/ → /'ju:s-'tu/

牛刀小试

▶ 朗读下面每组中的词或词组，注意省音现象对读音的影响。

1. 词首连缀wr-, kn-, gn-的第一个字母w, k, g不发音

write

wrath

wrist

knee

know

knight

▶ 2. 词末的-gn, -gm中的g不发音

sign

reign

foreign

diaphragm

▶ 3. 词末的-mn, -mb中的n和b不发音

autumn

damn

condemn

lamb

climb

bomb

▶ 4. /s/-/l/、/s/-/n/和/f/-/n/间的/t/不发音

castle

wrestle

bustle

listen

fasten

hasten

soften

often

▶ 5. bt中的b不发音

subtle

debt

doubt

▶ 6. lf, lk, lm中的l不发音

calf

half

talk

walk

folk

palm

▶ 7. 一些在词首的h或在前缀ex-后及重读元音和轻读元音之间的h不发音

heir

hour

honour

honest

exhaust

exhibit

exhort

vehicle

▶ 8. 前一词以/st/, /st/, /ft/, /nd/, /ld/, /zd/, /ðd/, /vd/等结尾, 后一词以辅音开始, 则其中的/t/, /d/不发音

next day

last chance

first light

west region

just one

left turn

loved flowers

send round

left wheel

pushed them

▶ 9. 前一词以 /pt/, /kt/, /tft/, /bd/, /gd/, /dʒd/ 结尾, 后一词以辅音开始, 则其中的 /t/, /d/ 不发音

kept quiet

jumped well

judged fairly

changed colour

begged one

grabbed them

reached Paris

liked jam

looked fine

picked one

▶ 10. 动词否定结尾 -n't /nt/ 中的 /t/ 常常不发音

You mustn't lose it.

Doesn't she know?

He wouldn't overeat.

▶ 11. 前一词末的/t/在下一词首/t/或/d/之前有时不发音

I've got to go.

What do you want?

秘诀6：弱式音

英语中大约有四十个词可以用两种不同的方式发音，一种是强式，一种是弱式。具有这种功能的词一般是功能词，如：助动词、介词、连词等。

the、a、an、and、but、her、his、us、them、for、from、of、some、there、can、shall、must、are、do。

如：why am I here as much as possible

try to stop the thing that annoys me

只有在以下几种情况下使用强式：

- 1) 在句末。
- 2) 与另一个词形成对比。
- 3) 用重音表示强调。
- 4) 被单独引用。

流畅朗读句子的 4大要点



很多人都以为只要听懂了每个单词，就算听明白了。但实际情况是“只想着听懂单词，就可以万事大吉，是远远不够的”，因为人们在说话的时候，往往伴随着一些语调上的变化，这些不同的语调淋漓尽致地表现了人们怀疑、肯定、激动、感叹等众多情感的变化。比如说“你没听清楚别人的讲话，希望对方再重复一下”，就要说“升调”的 I beg your pardon。但是如果“你不小心踩到了别人的脚上”，就要用到“降调”的 I beg your pardon. 看来同样的一句话，由于“语调”的不同，意思也就有所差别。所以如果你还不太清楚“英语语调”的知识，就和我们一起来研究它们的妙用吧。

首先要知道英语主要有三种语调，分别是升调、降调和降升调。

先说说“升调”，它一般表示“不确定”、

“话还没有说完” 或者 “礼貌”。经常用于下面几类句型中：

1. 一般疑问句

Is he coming tonight?

Have you got the tickets?

2. 反问句

You are definitely coming?

You like it?

3. 表示安慰或鼓励

Come with us.

4. 重复

When did you come?

如果要表示出“说话人改变主意，或话外有话之意”，就可以让“降升调”大显身手了。它主要出现在下面的句式中：

1. 有对比的陈述句

You can come on Tuesday but not Monday.

He doesn't want it but his brother may.

2. 含保留意见的陈述句

I know his face.

I like the colour of your dress.

3. 否认或矛盾

I can't do it. You can.

4. 警告

Be careful. Don't be late.

上面这些关于语调的基本知识虽然总结起来条条框框的，但在实际生活中，你常常会自觉地运用各种语调来表达你的情感，比如说你想让淘气的孩子跟着你出去，就会用“降调”的肯定的语气说到**Come with me**；如果你还没有确定对方是否和你出去吃饭，就可以用“升调”问**Come with me**，表示“和我出去怎么样啊”。这种“试探性”的语气细细体会起来，“什么场合用什么语调”还真的是很自然的事情。今后在看“美国原版影片”的时候，多多注意一下影片中人物的语音语调，模仿几次之后，你就可以灵活运用了！

要点1：句子的停顿

为了使意思表达的更加清楚或为了换气的需要，人们在说话或朗读时经常需要停顿。

标点符号往往被用来决定句中停顿的长短。例如：

1. 在一个使用句号的句子末尾，往往可以有较长的停顿。例如：

This is Tianjin University of Technology.

这是天津理工大学。

2. 在一个长句中，意群与意群之间的停顿则较短。这些停顿往往由逗号、分号、冒号等加以分开。例如：

When winter comes, it gets colder and colder, and the days get shorter.

到了冬天，天气越来越冷，白天越来越短。

牛刀小试

The family is a co-operative enterprise for which it is difficult to lay down rules, because each family needs to work out its own ways for solving its own problems.

家庭就像是一个合作式的企业一样，很难制定统一的规则，因为每个家庭都需要自己的独特解决问题的办法。

要点2：句子的意群

一个句子可以按照意义和语法结构分成几个部分，每一个部分称为一个意群。

意群是根据意义、语法和语调这三个因素来划分的。从语义、语法上讲，意群必须是能表达某种意思的一个词、一组词、一个短语或一个分句，一个从句或主句。从语调来讲，意群必须是可以降调、升调来朗读的一个语调单位。例如：

Before 1949, | I used to live in Hong Kong | and worked as a teacher.

1949年以前，我住在香港，在那里教书。

从以上例句可以看到，一个较长的句子一般都有两个或三个意群。意群根据其在句中位置可以分为句首意群、句中意群和句末意群。例如：

Before 1949, | I used to live in Hong Kong and worked as a teacher.

（句首意群）（句中意群）（句末意群）

句首意群的语调在较长的语句中通常用升调，表示作为句子的开始部分，意思不完整，尚需下文，这是升调的功能之一。当然，如果句首意群所表示的是比较完整的意义，也可使用降调。例如：

He put the letter into the envelope, | smoked a cigarette | and then walked out of his room.

他把信放进信封，抽了支烟，然后走出

了房间。

句中意群通常也用升调表示，理由和句首意群常用升调相同。如用降调则表示意义完整、语义重要，和后面的部分联系并不密切。例如：

When she learned that, | she was very angry | and decided to punish the man.

她知道这件事后非常生气，决定惩罚这个男人。

句末意群在较长的陈述句、特殊问句、选择问句以及惊叹句末尾通常用降调。例如：

Last month she went to Florida to see her mother.

这是一个陈述句，一般用降调。

What are you going to do when you finish school?

这是一个特殊问句，一般用降调。

Would you like to work in Beijing or in

Hong Kong?

这是一个选择疑问句，or后面的部分要用降调。

What a wonderful time we had last night!

这是一个惊叹句，用降调。

要点3：句子的重音

在句子中，并非所有的单词都要重读。一些单词失去重音，而另一些单词要重读。这些重读的音节就构成了句重音。

一般来说，实词在句子中需要重读，包括名词、形容词、数词、主要动词、副词及部分代词；虚词在句子中需要弱读，包括冠词、介词、连词、助动词、人称代词、关系代词等。

例如：

I am 'reading a 'very 'interesting 'novel.

'Dress yourself more 'neatly.

朗读下列句子，注意重读和弱读音节。

1.They'll visit the museum on Friday.

他们星期五将要参观博物馆。

2.Some are better than others.

一些比另外一些要好。

3.I came to your room, but you were out.

我来到你的房间，但是你出去了。

4.By the way, can you come up next week?

顺便问一下，你下周能来吗？

5.Let's have some ham and eggs.

让我们吃一些火腿和鸡蛋。

6.She's just as good as he is.

她和他一样优秀。

7.What are they staring at?

他们在盯着看什么？

8.Where did he come from?

他从哪里来？



9. This is the most beautiful place I've ever been.

这是我去过的最美丽的地方。

10. I think he should be at home now.

我想他现在应该在家。

11. He could do it if he would.

如果他愿意他就做了。

要点4：句子的语调

语调 (intonation)，即说话的腔调，就是一句话里声调 (pitch) 高低、抑扬、轻重的配制和变化。世界上没有一种语言是用单一的声调说出的，英语有五种基本语调：升调 (↗)、降调 (↘)、升降调 (∧)、降升调 (∨) 以及平调 (→)。一句话除了词汇意义 (lexical meaning) 还有语调意义 (intonation meaning)。所谓词汇意义就是话中所用词的意义，而语调意义就是说话人用语调所表示的态度或口气。一句话的词汇意义加上语调意义才算是完整的意义。同样的句子，语调不同，意思就会不同，有时甚至会相差

千里。请看如下例子：

A: Jean, can you bring me the newspaper?

B: Sorry? (↗)

Jean用升调说Sorry，其意思是I didn't hear you. Could you say that again, please?

我们再看下句：

A: Jean, can you bring me the newspaper?

B: Sorry. (↘)

在第二个对话中，Jean用降调说Sorry，显然其意思是拒绝帮助或无能为力。

降调用在以下几种情况中：

1. 普通陈述句。例如：

Tom is not a very good lawyer, I'm afraid.

John comes from Australia.

My watch does not work. France is a beautiful country.

Mary and I live in the same dormitory. I am forty years old.

2. 特殊疑问句。例如：

What does he do for a living? What is the

weather like today?

3.表示命令的祈使句。例如:

Be quiet. Come here.

4.感叹句。例如:

What a shame! How weird!

My goodness! What a beautiful day!

How strange! What nonsense!

What a pretty gift it is!

How wonderful it is to take a walk after supper!

5.选择疑问句的最后选择部分。例如:

Is she American or British?

Did you put your money in the wallet or in your pocket?

6.反意疑问句的前一部分。例如:

You are a teacher, aren't you?

Let's go to school together, shall we?

7.作答语的简短问句。例如:

—Tom is absent today.—Is he?

—I went to the movies last night.—Did you?

升调

升调一般用来表示不确定、不完整或者表示礼貌。一般来说，在如下几种情况下要用到升调。

1. 表示怀疑和不肯定的一般疑问句。例如：

Have you ever been to **China**?

Can you speak **English**?

Can you talk to him **today**?

Shall we go to see **her**?

Is it the book you are **reading**?

2. 陈述疑问句。例如：

I must go to work on **weekends**?

You are angry with **him**?

3. 选择问句前面的选择部分。例如：

Do you like **beef**, **chicken**, or fish?

Is it **white**, **blue**, or red?

4.反意疑问句的附加问句。例如:

You are a teacher, aren't you?

You cannot speak English, can you?

You have finished your work, haven't you?

Tom didn't get there in time, did he?

We shall not have time, shall we?

5.语句未完的短语或列举。例如:

He sat down by my side, took out a small piece of paper and gave it to me.

I like maths, English, Physics and Biology.

6.句首的状语。例如:

A moment later, she arrived home.

Under the **bed** sits the fat cat.

7. 有礼貌的请求。例如：

Take a **seat**.

Follow me, **please**.

8. 语气显得友好和关切的特殊疑问句。

例如：

Where did you go for **holiday**?

What's your **name**?

第三部分

稳步前进：速学高频句型





1 Are you going to...? 你打算……?



1. **Are you going to** New York with many friends?

你打算和很多朋友一起去纽约吗?

2. **Are you going to** visit many interesting places in Japan?

你打算参观日本的很多有趣的地方吗?

3. **Are you going to** eat in that restaurant?

你打算去那家餐厅吃饭吗?

4. **Are you going to** write many letters to your parents?

你打算给你的父母写很多信吗?

5. **Are you going to** spend your holiday abroad?

你打算去国外度假吗?

Dialogue 1

A: Can you tell me something about Disneyland?

B: Sure. **Are you going to** take a trip?

A: That's right. I'll visit there with my wife for a couple of days.

B: I've been there only once.

But I'll tell you what I can remember.

A: 请您给我讲讲迪斯尼乐园的情况好吗?

B: 当然可以。您是不是打算去那里旅行?

A: 是的。我打算和我的妻子去那里游玩几天。

B: 我只去过那里一次。不过我可以把我记得的东西全告诉您。



Dialogue 2

A: Bob, **are you going to** show up at meeting?

B: No. I can't make it tonight. Something's come up.

A: Are you sure you can't make it? This meeting is very important.

B: I know. But I really can't. It's a family problem.



A: Well, OK. I'll tell you about the meeting tomorrow.

B: Thanks. I'm sure I'll make the next meeting.

A: 鲍伯，你今晚去开会吗？

B: 不去。我今晚没办法去，有点事。

A: 你确定你没办法去吗？这个会议很重要。

B: 我知道。但是我真的没办法。这是个家庭问题。

A: 嗯，好吧。我明天会告诉你会议内容。

B: 谢谢。我想下次开会一定能去。

2. Can you...? 你能……？



1. **Can you** do me a favor?

你能帮我一个忙吗？

2. **Can you** see the moon yet?

你能看到月亮吗？

3. **Can you** speak Russian?

你会说俄语吗？

4. **Can you** tell me how to pronounce your friend's name?

你能告诉我你朋友的名字怎么发音吗？

5. **Can you** leave work early today?

今天你能早点下班吗？

Dialogue 1

A: **Can you** assure the quality of this air conditioner?

B: Yes, madam. There will be no problem with the quality. You don't have to worry about it. We have a one-year warranty.

A: Are you sure?

B: Sure, we have a good after-sales service. Your satisfaction is guaranteed.

A: 你能保证这台空调的质量吗？

B: 是的，女士。质量不会有问题。你不必为此担心。我们有一年的保修期。

A: 你肯定？

B: 当然肯定，我们的售后服务很好。包你满意。



Dialogue 2

A: Hello, is this the auto repair store?

B: Yes. What can we do for you?

A: My car broke down on the road. **Can you** come over and tow it to your shop?

B: That's not a problem. Where are you then?

A: 你好，这里是汽车修理厂吗？

B: 是的，要我们帮忙吗？

A: 我的车坏在路上了。你们能过来把车拖到修理厂吗？

B: 那没问题。那么你在哪儿呢？

3. Do you mind...? 你介意……？



1. **Do you mind** my smoking?

你介意我抽烟吗？

2. **Do you mind** if I smoke?

你介意我抽烟吗？

3. **Do you mind** sharing the table?

你介意我和你共用桌子吗？

4. **Do you mind** if I sit next to you?

你介意我坐旁边吗?

5. **Do you mind** helping me?

你介意帮我一个忙吗?

Dialogue 1

A: How did the meeting go yesterday?

B: It's hard to say. Both sides made some valid points.

A: What is our next step?

B: We are having another meeting to discuss that tomorrow.

A: **Do you mind** if I sit in on it?

B: Please do. We welcome your advice.

A: 昨天的会议开得怎么样?

B: 很难说。两方面的看法都很有道理。

A: 那我们下一步要怎么做呢?

B: 我们明天还要开会继续讨论。

A: 我来旁听会议你介意吗?

B: 来吧。我们很欢迎您的建议。

Dialogue 2

A: Mr. Smith, **do you mind** if I am gone for a while?

B: Of course not. But where are you going?

A: I have to pick up my laundry from the dry cleaners on the corner.

B: Will you be gone very long?

A: No, only about ten minutes. Would you like me to get you something?

B: No, thanks.

A: 史密斯先生，您介意我出去一会儿吗？

B: 当然不介意。你要去哪儿？

A: 我要去街角那家干洗店取回送洗的衣服。

B: 你要去很久吗？

A: 不，大约只去十分钟。要我替您捎点儿东西吗？

B: 不用，谢谢。

4. How...! / What...! 真……! / 多么……!



1. **How** stupid he is!

他真笨!

2. **How** expensive this car is!

这部车真贵!

3. **What** a beautiful color!

多美的颜色啊!

4. **What** lovely flowers!

多美的花啊!

5. **What** a cold morning!

多冷的早晨啊!

Dialogue 1

A: **What** a week!

B: Really! I've never seen so much work.

A: I'm so happy just to go home.

B: Right. Thank God, it's Friday!

A: Well, have a nice weekend.



B: Thank you. You, too!

A: 多累的一周!

B: 真的! 我从没看过这么多的工作。

A: 我只要回家就很高兴了。

B: 对。感谢上帝, 礼拜五了!

A: 嗯, 周末愉快。

B: 谢谢你。周末愉快!



Dialogue 2

A: **How fresh** you are looking! I think that you have had a refreshing sleep.

B: Yes, thank you.

A: What do you think about the room service and the food here?

B: The room service is quite satisfactory and the food is very delicious.

A: 您看上去精神很好! 我想您一定是睡了一个解乏的好觉。

B: 是的, 谢谢。

A: 您觉得这家饭店的客房服务和饭菜味道

怎么样？

B: 客房服务令人非常满意，饭菜也很可口。

5. Have you ever...? 你曾经……？



1. **Have you ever** gone skiing?

你有没有滑过雪？

2. **Have you ever** lost your wallet?

你有没有丢过钱包？

3. **Have you ever** had a broken bone?

你有没有断过一根骨头？

4. **Have you ever** gone to a dentist?

你有没有去看过牙医？

5. **Have you ever** bought imported cigars?

你有没有买过进口的雪茄？

Dialogue 1

A: Mr. Li, **have you ever** been to America?

B: Yes, I've been there.



A: Really? What is it like there?

B: Well, I'd say it is a highly developed country.

A: 李先生，你去过美国吗？

B: 我去过。

A: 真的吗？那儿怎么样？

B: 嗯，我觉得它是一个高度发达的国家。



Dialogue 2

A: Susan, where have you been? It's been a long time since I met you last month.

B: I went to Japan for a vacation. By the way, **have you ever** been to Japan?

A: No, I've never been there.

B: You really should. It's a beautiful country with a mild climate in summer.

A: That sounds inviting. Maybe I'll go there next year.

A: 苏珊，你去哪儿了？自从我上个月见到你之后好长时间不见了。

B: 我去日本度假了。对了，你去过日本吗？

A: 没有，我从来都没有去过。

B: 你应该去一下。那儿很美丽，夏天气候也很怡人。

A: 听上去很诱人。也许我明年就会去。

6. I am (not) sure... 我（不）确信……



1. **I am sure** this is the right way.

我确信这个方法是对的。

2. **I am sure** that I drank only one bottle of beer last night.

我敢肯定昨晚我只喝了一瓶啤酒。

3. **I am not sure** whether he will be able to find our office.

我不知道他能否找到我们的办公室。

4. **I am not sure** if I can come to your party.

我不能确定我能否参加你的派对。



5. **I am not sure** where we will live next year.

我不能确定明年我们会住在哪里。



Dialogue 1

A: I wonder if anyone showed up at Mary's party last night.

B: **I am sure** the accounting group did.

A: Do you really think so? I thought Mary was in Engineering.

B: She is, but she works with the cost analysis group daily.

A: 我在想昨天晚上有没有人参加玛丽的宴会。

B: 我确定会计组的人都去了。

A: 真的吗? 我还以为玛丽是工程组的。

B: 她是在工程组, 但是她每天都跟成本分析组的在一起工作。

 *Dialogue 2*

A: OK, I am ready to sign the agreement. But **I am sure** you need an original signature, not a faxed copy.

B: That's right. I can send the contract to you by Federal Express.

A: So I will receive it and send it back overnight?

B: Well, Federal Express is not quite that fast. It usually takes 3 to 4 days to ship from here to the United States.

A: That's OK. We'll still be able to meet the deadline.

B: I will keep you posted.

A: 好的，我已经准备好了签合同。但我知道你们需要的是原件，不是传真件。

B: 是的。我会用联邦快递把合同给你送去。

A: 那么我明天就可以收到并寄回去了？

B: 噢，联邦快递没有那么快。通常到美国的邮件要3~4天。



A: 没关系。我们还是可以赶上最后期限的。

B: 我会与你保持联络。

7. I am used to... 我习惯于……



1. **I am used to** living alone.

我习惯了一个人住。

2. **I am used to** using a fork and a knife.

我习惯了用刀叉。

3. **I am used to** driving to work.

我习惯了开车去上班。

4. **I am used to** leaving the windows open at night.

我习惯了晚上开着窗户。

5. **I am used to** living with many people.

我习惯了和很多人住在一起。



Dialogue 1

A: How do you feel about your school?

B: Pretty good. **I'm used to** my classes.



A: Well, how about your professors?

B: Yeah, they're really nice.

A: 你对学校的感觉如何?

B: 很好。我已经习惯了我的课。

A: 那么, 你喜欢你的几位教授吗?

B: 喜欢, 他们都很好。

Dialogue 2

A: Can you keep up with your English class?

B: I felt it was a bit difficult at the beginning.

A: How come?

B: Our English teacher speaks English fast with a heavy accent.

A: That's not a big problem. You'll **get used to** his way of speaking.

A: 你能跟上英语课吗?

B: 一开始我感觉有一点困难。

A: 怎么回事?

B: 我们的英语老师说话很快, 而且带有很浓的地方口音。



A: 那不是什么问题。你会习惯他的说话方式的。

8. I am calling to... 我打电话是为了……



1. **I'm calling to** ask you for a favor.

我打电话来是想请你帮个忙。

2. **I'm calling to** see if you are all right.

我打电话来是想看你是否还好。

3. **I'm calling to** apologize for what I did last night.

我打电话来是为我昨晚做的事道歉。

4. **I'm calling to** see if you want any IP cards for half price.

我打电话来是想问你是否想要半价的IP卡。

5. **I'm calling to** say that I can't teach you tonight.

我打电话来是想说今晚我不能教你。

 *Dialogue 1*

A: Mr. White, **I'm calling to** say that I'm really sorry about what happened yesterday.

B: Don't worry about it. It could have happened to anyone, so you shouldn't blame yourself.

A: I'm glad you feel that way. I've been worried sick about it.

B: Well, let's just forget about it. Tomorrow it'll be as if nothing ever happened.

A: Thanks for your understanding. I'll try to do better in the future.

A: 怀特先生，我打电话来是想说，对于昨天所发生的事我真的很抱歉。

B: 别放在心上。这种情形人人都有可能碰上，所以你也不要太自责了。

A: 您能这么想我就放心了。我一直担心的要命。

B: 那就让我们忘了它吧。明天起就当这件事从来没发生过。

A: 谢谢您的谅解。以后我会多多改进的。



Dialogue 2

A: **I'm calling to** ask you to attend a press conference at 3 o'clock this afternoon.

B: Where will it be held?

A: It'll be held in the conference room of our company.

B: OK. Should I prepare any materials or data?

A: Yes, please. Prepare some necessary materials and data on the quality of our products. It's important.

B: Well, I will.

A: 我打电话来是通知你去参加今天下午三点钟的一个新闻发布会。

B: 新闻发布会在哪儿举行?

A: 发布会将在我们公司的会议室举行。

B: 好的。我要准备一些材料或数据吗?

A: 是的。请准备一些必要的有关我们产品质量的材料和数据。这个很重要。

B: 哦，我会的。

9. I am crazy about...

我对……很着迷 / 喜欢



1. **I'm crazy about** girls with straight black hair.

我对有黑色直发的女孩很着迷。

2. **I'm crazy about** traveling.

我很喜欢旅游。

3. **I'm crazy about** sailing.

我很喜欢航海。

4. **I'm crazy about** dancing.

我很热爱跳舞。

5. **I'm crazy about** collecting posters.

我很热衷于收集海报。

Dialogue 1

A: Hey, look at this announcement in the paper. Coco Lee is coming to Guangzhou next week.

B: So. Do you like her?



A: Coco Lee is the best! **I'm crazy about** Coco Lee.

B: Well, I think you should go to her concert.

A: 嘿，看看报上的预告。李玟下周要来广州了。

B: 那么。你喜欢她吗？

A: 李玟是最好的！我对李玟很疯狂。

B: 那么，我想你应该去看她的演唱会。



Dialogue 2

A: Charles, you have such a fantastic home. Your decorations are wonderful and these paintings are especially good.

B: Thanks, Dorothy. The artist is Gretchen Schmidt. **I'm crazy about** her paintings.

A: I can see you have a good taste in art.

B: I have had good teachers.

A: 查尔斯，你家真漂亮。你的摆设很雅致，这些画尤其好。

B: 谢谢，多萝西。画家是Gretchen

Schmidt。我对她的画很着迷。

A: 我看得出你在艺术上很有品味。

B: 我有过很好的老师。

10. I can't stand...

我不能忍受……



1. **I can't stand** him lying all the time.

我忍受不了他老是说谎。

2. **I can't stand** waiting.

我无法再等下去了。

3. **I can't stand** American-style fast food. 我受不了美国式的快餐。

4. **She can't stand** hard liquor.

她受不了喝烈酒。

5. **He can't stand** lazy students.

他容忍不了懒惰的学生。

Dialogue 1

A: Mike, would you please turn down the radio a little?

B: What's wrong? Don't you like Backstreet Boys?

A: **I really can't stand** their voices. They are so noisy.

B: But I remember you said you liked them!

A: That's a long time ago. Now turn it down.

A: 迈克，请把收音机的音量调低点好吗？

B: 怎么了？难道你不喜欢后街男孩？

A: 我真的无法忍受他们的声音。太吵了。

B: 但是我记得你说你是喜欢他们的！

A: 那是很久以前的事情了。现在把音量调低点吧。

Dialogue 2

A: Hey, Alice. Would you like to join me for a film?

B: It depends, Bruce. What kind of movie do you want to see?

A: It's the latest Hollywood horror movie. It's about space monsters.

B: Thanks for the offer, but I'd rather not see **it. I can't stand** horror movies.

A: 嘿，艾丽斯。你愿意和我一起去看电影吗？

B: 看情况啦，布鲁斯。你要看什么类型的电影？

A: 好莱坞最近的一部恐怖片。是关于太空怪物的。

B: 谢谢你的邀请，但我还是不看为好。我受不了恐怖片。

11. I need... 我需要……



1. **I need** your suggestions.

我需要你的建议。

2. **I need** your help.

我需要你的帮助。

3. **I need** something to write with.

我需要写字用具。

4. **I need** more practice.

我需要多加练习。



5. I **need** to walk in the fresh air.

我需要在新鲜的空气里散步。



Dialogue 1

A: I heard you had an argument with your supervisor.

我听说你和你的主管有争执。

B: Yeah. He wants me to work more overtime.

是的。他要我加班。

A: Well, don't you want the money?

噢，你不想要钱吗？

B: The money's OK, but **I need** my free time, too.

钱是要，但是我也需要自己的时间。

A: Why don't you work overtime for just one month?

你为何不只加一个月班呢？

B: No way! Forty hours a week, and that's it!

绝不！一周四十个钟头，就这么多了！

 *Dialogue 2*

A: Hello, Mr. White. I am calling to congratulate you on your promotion.

您好，怀特先生。我打电话来是祝贺您升迁的。

B: Ah, you are really well-informed.

哈，你真是消息灵通啊。

A: Good news has wings. I sincerely wish you the great success at your new post.

好消息总是传得很快。我真诚祝愿您在新的岗位上取得巨大的成功。

B: Thank you. I will personally continue to count on your help in the future.

谢谢。我个人也指望将来能继续得到你的帮助。

A: Sure, **I need** your help too. The best luck in your new position. Good-bye.

当然，我也需要您的帮助。祝您在新的岗位上万事如意。再见。

B: Thanks for calling. Good-bye.

谢谢你来电祝贺。再见。



12. I can't believe...

我不能相信……



1. **I can't believe** that our football team only won by chance.

我无法相信我们的足球队只是侥幸赢了。

2. **I can't believe** I passed the examination.

我无法相信我过了考试。

3. **I can't believe** the shirt is so expensive.

我无法相信这件衬衣这么贵。

4. **I can't believe** she failed the test.

我不能相信她居然没通过考试。

5. **I can't believe** you are immigrating to another country.

我无法相信你在移民去另一个国家。



Dialogue 1

A: **I can't believe** that girl breaks all of the classroom rules.

B: She should have better manners than that.



A: Not only does she bring food into the classroom, she rattles the paper during class.

B: Yes, and she always talks while the teacher is telling the class something.

A: She should have more respect for her teacher and her classmates.

A: 我简直不敢相信那个女孩违反了所有的课堂纪律。

B: 她应该守规矩点。

A: 她不但带零食进教室，而且还在课堂上挤压纸张发出很大的声音。

B: 是的，老师讲课时，她还一直讲话。

A: 她应该多尊重老师和同学们。

Dialogue 2

A: Tanya left here today. She went back to her home.

B: She did? Wow. That is a surprise to me.



A: It's a surprise to me, too. **I can't believe** I won't see her again.

B: Cheer up. If Tanya doesn't come back here, you can go to see her!

A: 唐崖今天离开这里了。她回家了。

B: 她回去了? 哇。我很吃惊。

A: 我也很吃惊。我简直不能相信我不会再见到她了。

B: 高兴点。如果唐崖不来这里, 你可以去看她!

13. I bet... 我打赌……



1. **I bet** he will get the sack soon.

我敢说 he 很快会被炒鱿鱼的。

2. **I bet** the movie tickets are sold out tonight.

我断定今晚的电影票已卖完了。

3. **I bet** it's going to be hot today.

我确信今天会很热。

4. **I bet** she will lose this game.

我敢打赌她会输了这场比赛。

5. **I bet** the meeting will be cancelled.

我敢打赌会议会被取消。

Dialogue 1

A: Let's back up. Where was I?

我们回过头去，我讲到哪儿了？

B: You were talking about your trip to South Africa.

你在讲有关你的南非之行。

A: Oh, yes, now I remember.

喔，对了，这会儿我想起来了。

B: So, how many people went on that trip with you?

那么，多少人跟你一块儿去旅行？

A: Five.

五个。

B: **I bet** you had a great time.

我相信你们一定玩得很快乐。



Dialogue 2

A: Can you take a look at my tape recorder? It isn't working.

你帮我看录音机好吗？它坏了。

B: What's the problem?

有什么毛病？

A: I push the "play" button and nothing happens.

我按播放键，但是没反应。

B: Hmm... did you check the batteries?

嗯……你检查电池了吗？

A: Oh, no! **I bet** the batteries are dead.

噢，没有！我敢说是电池没电了。

B: Then that's the problem.

那就是问题所在了。

14. I didn't know... 我不知道……



1. **I didn't know** you were waiting for me.

我不知道你在等我。

2. **I didn't know** how to swim until I was 16 years old.

我直到十六岁才知道怎么游泳。

3. **I didn't know** where the boss went.

我还不知道老板去哪里了。

4. **I didn't know** cheese was so expensive.

我还不知道奶酪这么贵。

5. **I didn't know** you weren't coming to Thanksgiving Day dinner.

我当时不知道你不会来吃感恩节大餐。



Dialogue 1

A: I have got to go now. I am late. It's 8:45!

B: Where are you going? You don't have to work today.

A: Oh! **I didn't know** that today is a holiday!



B: That's right. You can relax.

A: 我现在得走了。我迟到了。八点四十五了!

B: 你去哪里? 今天你不要上班。

A: 噢! 我还不知道今天放假呢!

B: 说得对。你可以放松放松。



Dialogue 2

A: Here comes Mrs. Benson. Did you do your homework?

B: What! **I didn't know** we had homework!

A: You should pay more attention to what goes on in class.

B: Well, maybe she will let me hand it in tomorrow.

A: 奔森夫人来了。你做家庭作业了吗?

B: 什么! 我还不知道我们有家庭作业呢!

A: 你应该多注意课堂上的事。

B: 嗯, 说不定她会让我明天交。

15. I can't afford...

我承担不起……



1. **I can't afford** to take a trip anywhere.

我去哪里旅行都没钱。

2. **I can't afford** a vacation.

我没有足够的钱去度假。

3. **I can't afford** to smoke Cuban cigars.

我买不起古巴雪茄。

4. These are nice athletic shoes, but **I can't afford** to buy them.

这些运动鞋很好，但是我买不起。

5. That train is so comfortable, but **I can't afford** the ticket.

那趟火车很舒服，但是我买不起票。

 *Dialogue 1*

A: Bob, we're going to lay you off.

B: What? **I can't afford** to be laid off now.



A: I'm sorry, Bob. We can't afford to keep you.

B: But Mr. Schmidt, I've been a good employee. I just bought a new car...

A: Bob, there's no question about it. We're laying you off next week.

B: I'm going to talk to the union steward about this.

A: 鲍伯，我们得把你解雇了。

B: 什么？我现在不能被解雇。

A: 对不起，鲍伯。但是我们供不起你。

B: 但是士米德先生，我一直是个好雇员。我刚买了部新车……

A: 鲍伯，这是一定的。我们下周就要解雇你了。

B: 我要去找工会管理人谈这件事。



Dialogue 2

A: I think we should take a taxi to the airport. I don't want to miss our flight.

B: **I can't afford** to take a taxi. Why don't we just take a bus?

A: If we share the cost of a taxi, it is not so expensive. Besides, if we miss the plane, we will lose time and money.

B: Wow, you're right. I didn't think of that.

A: 我觉得我们应该坐出租车去飞机场。我不想错过我们的航班。

B: 我坐不起出租车。我们为什么不乘公共汽车呢?

A: 如果我们分摊出租车的费用, 这样并不贵。而且, 如果我们错过了飞机, 我们会既浪费时间又浪费钱。

B: 哇, 你说对。我还没想到这一点。

16. I feel like... 我想……



1. **I feel like** being with her.

我想和她在一起。

2. **I feel like** going swimming this weekend.

我想这个周末去游泳。



3. **I feel like** listening to this music.

我想听这首音乐。

4. **I feel like** drinking beer.

我想喝啤酒。

5. **I feel like** taking a walk.

我想去散步。



Dialogue 1

A: **I'll feel like** kicking myself!

B: Why?

A: I made a terrible mistake. I forgot to fill up the tank this morning and now I wish I hadn't.

B: Oh! Do you mean that we're out of gas?

A: Yes, we are ... and it's all my fault. If I hadn't forgotten to fill up the tank this morning, we wouldn't be out of gas.

B: That's too bad!

A: 我真糊涂!



B: 怎么啦?

A: 我出了大错, 我今早忘了把油箱灌满, 哎, 我真希望我没忘。

B: 噢! 你是说我们没油了吗?

A: 是的, 我们……全怪我。如果我今早没忘了把油箱加满, 我们不会没油的。

B: 太糟了!

Dialogue 2

A: Excuse me, miss. I'm not feeling very well.

B: Take it easy, sir. Are you feeling airsick?

A: Maybe. **I feel like** vomiting.

B: You can find a bag in the seat pocket if you need it.

A: 对不起, 小姐。我感觉有点儿不舒服。

B: 放松点, 先生。你是晕机吗?

A: 可能是吧。我觉得想吐。

B: 你需要的话, 可以用座位背袋里的塑胶袋。



17. I enjoy... 我喜欢……



1. **I enjoy** spending time with my family.

我喜欢和我的家人在一起。

2. **I enjoyed** going out with my classmate last night.

昨晚我和我的同学外出玩得很愉快。

3. **I enjoy** watching action movies.

我喜欢看武打片。

4. **I enjoy** working in a clean and orderly office.

我喜欢在一个干净、整齐的办公室工作。

5. **I enjoyed** having a quiet morning alone.

我享受了一个人的安静的早上。



Dialogue 1

A: I heard you are going for a trip to America. Have you got your air ticket?

B: I decided to go by sea.

A: But it takes nearly a month!

B: It may be slower, but **I can enjoy** the



beautiful sea scenery along the way.

A: 我听说你要到美国去旅行。买到飞机票了吗?

B: 我决定坐船去。

A: 但是那要花费将近一个月时间!

B: 也许是慢了一点，但是一路上我可以看美丽的海景。



Dialogue 2

A: Mr. Brown, do you feel I've done a good job for the company?

B: Of course, Ms. Yi. You're a valuable employee.

A: I'm glad you think so. **I enjoy** working here.

B: Let's get to the point, Ms. Yi. Is there something on your mind?

A: Yes, Mr. Brown.

B: Then let's hear it.

A: 布朗先生，你认为我做的对公司有益吗?

B: 当然，易女士。你是个很有价值的雇员。

A: 我很高兴你这么想。我喜欢在这里工作。

B: 让我们来谈要点，易女士。你有心事吗？

A: 是的，布朗先生。

B: 那么我们来听听。

18. I have... 我有……



1. **I have** a personal computer.

我有一台个人电脑。

2. **I have** a keen interest in you.

我对你很感兴趣。

3. **I have** two brothers and one sister.

我有两个兄弟和一个妹妹。

4. **I have** a friend in the United States.

我在美国有个朋友。

5. **I have** a meeting this afternoon.

今天下午我要参加一个会议。

Dialogue 1

A: Do you give discount for developing photos?

B: Yes. Two rolls for the price of one.

A: **I have** ten rolls.

B: OK. What print size would you like?

A: Regular, please.

A: 冲洗胶卷有特价吗?

B: 是的。冲洗2卷只收1卷的钱。

A: 我有10卷。

B: 好的。你想印多大的?

A: 请印普通的吧。

Dialogue 2

A: I'm sorry, sir, **I have** no more window seats.

B: Is there an aisle seat available?

A: Yes. Do you want that?

B: Is it in the rear of the plane?

A: No, it's over the wing.

B: Fine, I'll take it.

A: 抱歉，先生，我没有靠窗的座位了。



B: 靠走道的座位有没有空的?

A: 有的。你要那位子吗?

B: 它是在飞机的后部吗?

A: 不是, 它在机翼那儿。

B: 很好, 我就要它了。

19. I suspect...

我猜想……我怀疑……



1. **I suspect** he will pay me this time.

我猜想他这次会还钱给我。

2. **I suspect** that the factory is going to close.

我怀疑这家工厂会关门。

3. **I suspect** that the boss is going to make an announcement.

我猜想老板会做一次宣布。

4. **I suspect** that she is cheating on her husband.

我怀疑她对她老公不忠。

5. **I suspect** that the economy will get worse.

我怀疑经济会更加恶化。



Dialogue 1

A: Alice seems to be angry at Ralph.

B: And Ralph seems to be angry at Alice!

A: Do you know why they are both angry?

B: **I suspect** that money was the cause of the quarrel.

A: 艾丽斯看起来在生劳弗的气。

B: 而且劳弗看起来在生艾丽斯的气!

A: 你知道为什么他们两个都在生气吗?

B: 我怀疑钱是吵架的起因。

Dialogue 2

A: Wayne got the highest score in the school on that science test.

B: I can't believe it! He must have studied a lot for that success.

A: I doubt it. **I suspect** that he cheated on the examination.

B: Well, until I see evidence of that, I will trust him.



A: 维尼在学校的科学课考试中考了第一名。

B: 我简直不能相信! 他肯定为了这次成功学习了不少东西。

A: 我怀疑这一点。我怀疑他在考试中作弊了。

B: 嗯, 在我看到证据之前, 我都会相信他。

20. I hope... 我希望……



1. **I hope** you'll be successful.

我希望你会成功。

2. **I hope** our dreams come true.

我希望我们的梦想会实现。

3. **I hope** that the Giants will win.

我希望巨人队会赢。

4. **I hope** you will visit me.

我希望你来看我。

5. **I hope** the weather will be fine.

我希望天气转晴。



 *Dialogue 1*

A: Would you show me what's in that suitcase, please?

B: All right.

A: Oh, did you pay your duty?

B: Yes, here's the receipt. I'm already through customs.

A: OK. **I hope** you have a good time in China.

B: Thank you.

A: 您能不能让我看看您的箱子里有什么?

B: 可以。

A: 噢，您交税了吗?

B: 是的，这是收据。我已办完海关手续。

A: 好的。希望您在中国过得愉快。

B: 谢谢。

 *Dialogue 2*

A: Hi, John. How's everything going?

B: Not too bad, I'm busy with the conference.



All kinds of trifles, you know.

A: It'll be over soon, right?

B: Yes, **I hope** I can have a holiday when it is done.

A: 嗨，约翰。事情最近如何？

B: 还行，我忙着开会。有许多杂事，你是知道的。

A: 很快会结束的，是吗？

B: 是啊，我希望事情结束之后，会有一段假期。

21. I suppose / I think...

我想……，我认为……



1. **I suppose** you have a good point.

我想你说得很有道理。

2. **I suppose** I should stop complaining.

我想我应该停止抱怨。

3. **I suppose** you can eat that.

我想你可以吃那个。

4. **I think** there is a better way to earn

a living.

我认为谋生还有更好的办法。

5. **I think** the economy will improve.

我想经济会回升。

Dialogue 1

A: This is the first time I've ever attended a concert in China. I'm so excited.

B: I know you're a great music lover. Do you play any instruments?

A: I play the piano.

B: Now let's see what we have on the program.

A: **I suppose** all the compositions are world famous pieces.

B: Of course.

A: Will there be any singing at the concert?

B: Yes. Some are Chinese songs and some are foreign songs.



A: 这是我在中国第一次听音乐会。我很兴奋。

B: 我知道你是个喜欢音乐的人。你会玩些什么乐器吗?

A: 我会弹钢琴。

B: 让我们看看有什么曲子。

A: 我想所有的曲子都是世界名曲吧。

B: 当然。

A: 这次音乐会上有没有什么歌曲?

B: 有的。一些是中国歌曲, 一些是外国歌曲。



Dialogue 2

A: May I have the pleasure of a waltz or a tango?

B: Of course. Let's try the waltz. Will you hold my arm, Mr. Green?

A: With pleasure. **I suppose** you dance often.

B: Oh, no. To be frank, I haven't danced for a long time.

A: Still you dance very well.

B: Thanks. I'm glad you say so.

A: You're so modest. Actually, there is no



room for improvement in your dance.

B: Thank you for the compliment.

A: 能请你跳华尔兹舞或探戈舞吗?

B: 当然。我们来跳华尔兹吧。格林先生，请你挽着我的手臂好吗?

A: 很高兴。我猜你经常跳舞吧。

B: 哦，没有。说实话，我有好长时间没有跳舞了。

A: 可你跳得不错。

B: 谢谢，很高兴你这么认为。

A: 你太谦虚了。事实上，你的舞跳得再好不过了。

B: 谢谢你的夸奖。

22. I've never thought (of)...

我从未想到过……



1. **I've never thought of** going to Australia all my life.

我一生从来都没想过去澳大利亚。

2. **I've never thought of** quitting this



position.

我从未想过放弃这份工作。

3. **I've never thought of** stealing.

我从未想过去偷窃。

4. **I've never thought of** living abroad.

我从未想过住在国外。

5. **I've never thought** about that girl.

我从来没有想过那个女孩。



Dialogue 1

A: Alice, Ralph seems to like you.

B: I hope so, because I really like him!

A: I am not surprised. I thought so.

B: **I've thought about** asking him out to dinner.

A: 艾丽斯，劳弗好象很喜欢你。

B: 我希望如此，因为我真的很喜欢他！

A: 我不感到奇怪。我猜是这样的。

B: 我想过请他出去吃饭。

Dialogue 2

A: Tony, I think you are good at business.

B: I try to help the company.

A: You should consider starting your own company.

B: You're kidding! **I've never thought of** having my own business.

A: 托尼，我想你做生意很在行。

B: 我很努力为公司效力。

A: 你应该考虑开办自己的公司。

B: 你在开玩笑！我从未想过自己办公司。

23. I'm looking for... 我在寻找……



1. **I'm looking for** something colorful.

我在找些鲜艳的东西。

2. **I'm looking for** something less colorful.

我在找些不太鲜艳的东西。

3. **I'm looking for** something cheaper.

我在找便宜点的东西。



4. **I'm looking for** my wallet.

我在找皮夹。

5. **I'm looking for** my suitcase.

我在找手提箱。



Dialogue 1

A: Good afternoon, **I'm looking for** a souvenir for my wife. I don't know what to buy.

B: What about a necklace set with a heartshaped precious stone?

A: That's a good idea. Please show me some.

B: Yes, sir.

A: You've got a good selection of them, haven't you?

B: Yes, sir. Every day we get hundreds of tourists here for different sizes and designs.

A: 下午好，我想为妻子准备份纪念品。但不知买什么给她好。

B: 买条坠有心形宝石的项链怎么样?

A: 挺不错。请给我看一下。

B: 好的, 先生。

A: 你们这里有不少精品嘛。

B: 是的。每天成百上千的旅游者光临我们这里购买不同尺寸和式样的产品。



Dialogue 2

A: **I'm looking for** a new secretary.

B: Oh, yeah? What happened to your secretary?

A: She got married and quit.

B: Really?

A: Yes. Could you recommend someone to me?

B: Not at the moment, but I'll keep my eyes open for you.

A: Thank you.

A: 我正在找新秘书。

B: 噢, 这样啊? 你的秘书怎么啦?



A: 她因为结婚辞职了。

B: 真的?

A: 是啊。你有什么能推荐给我的人选吗?

B: 目前没有, 不过我会帮你注意的。

A: 谢谢。

24. I'm afraid... 我恐怕……



1. **I'm afraid** I don't speak French.

我恐怕不会说法语。

2. **I'm afraid** I have another appointment.

我恐怕有另一个约会。

3. **I'm afraid** I don't know this area.

我恐怕不熟悉这个地方。

4. **I'm afraid** I can't help you.

我恐怕无法帮助你。

5. **I'm afraid** I must go right away.

我恐怕必须马上走。



 *Dialogue 1*

A: Don't let the cat out of bag. If our teacher knows this, she will punish us.

B: **I'm afraid** sooner or later, she will know it.

A: If we keep the secret, she will never know the truth.

B: I'll do my best.

A: 不要泄密。如果老师知道了这件事，她会惩罚我们的。

B: 我恐怕迟早她会知道的。

A: 只要我们保守秘密，她将永远不会知道真相。

B: 我会尽力而为。

 *Dialogue 2*

A: Do you like travelling?

B: I'm afraid I'm not really interested in it.

A: Come on .You can see interesting places and interesting people by travelling.



B: **I'm afraid** I'll never find any interest in it.

A: I'm sure you'll like it in the future.

B: That's impossible.

A: 你喜欢旅行吗?

B: 我觉得我对它没什么兴趣。

A: 别这样。通过旅游你能看到有趣的地方、有趣的人。

B: 我觉得我永远也不会对它感兴趣。

A: 我敢肯定你以后会喜欢。

B: 那不可能。

25. I work for... 我在……工作



1. **I work for** an English conversation school.

我在英语会话学校做事。

2. **I work for** a trading company.

我在贸易公司做事。

3. **I work for** a publishing company.

我在出版社做事。

4. **I work for** a travel agency.

我在旅行社做事。

5. **I work for** a real estate agency.

我在房地产公司做事。

Dialogue 1

A: Sam, I heard you've set up a company of your own.

B: That's true. **I work for** myself now. I sell computer software.

A: Good for you. How is your business going?

B: Not bad. So far, so good.

A: 山姆，我听说你成立了自己的公司。

B: 没错。我现在为自己干。我卖计算机软件。

A: 真有你的。你的生意做得怎么样？

B: 不错。目前为止还好。

Dialogue 2

A: Where do you work, Bob?

B: I **work for** Super Software.

A: Are you a programmer?

B: I used to be, but now I'm developing CD-ROM products.

A: Have you been there for a long time?

B: Yes. I've worked at Super since I graduated from college ten years ago.

A: 鲍勃，你在哪里工作？

B: 我在超级软件工作。

A: 你是程序设计师吗？

B: 以前是，但是我现在从事光盘产品的研发工作。

A: 你在那里很久了吗？

B: 是的。我从大学毕业就开始在超级工作，到现在已经十年了。

26. I wonder... 我想知道……



1. **I wonder** if she has any children.

我想知道她是否有小孩。

2. **I wonder** if that restaurant has waffles for breakfast.

我想知道那家餐馆早餐是否有华夫饼。

3. **I wonder** if this watch is authentic.

我想知道这个手表是不是真货。

4. **I wonder** if he is still in the Army.

我想知道他是否还在部队。

5. **I wonder** what happened.

我想知道发生了什么事。

Dialogue 1

A: Hello. This is Jim of the Marketing Department. May I speak to Gary?

B: I'm sorry, but he is out of the office right now.

A: **I wonder** if you could give Gary a



message for me ?

B: Yes, certainly. Just a minute. I'll get a pen. (Pause) OK, please carry on.

A: There will be a very urgent meeting at four o'clock and I would like Gary to attend it.

B: OK, an urgent meeting...four o'clock...May I ask what it's regarding?

A: Yes. It's regarding our sales strategy this year.

B: I'll let him know, Jim.

A: Thank you very much. Bye.

B: Bye.

A: 你好。我是营销部的吉姆。想找一下加里。

B: 很抱歉，他现在不在办公室里。

A: 你能不能给加里带个口信？

B: 当然能。请等一下。我拿支笔。开始吧。

A: 四点有一个紧急会议，我希望加里能参加。

B: 好的，紧急会议……四点……我能问一下会议是什么方面的吗？

A: 可以。是关于今年我们的销售战略问题。

B: 我会转告他的，吉姆。

A: 非常感谢。再见。

B: 再见。

Dialogue 2

A: Jane, do you know where Ms. Brown's class is?

B: It's in Room 3025. Why are you asking?

A: **I wonder** if I could choose her course.

B: But it's already midterm!

A: What I mean is if I can take the exam and get the credit.

B: I don't think you can get through it. She's not a push-over.

A: 简，你知道布朗太太的课在哪儿上吗？

B: 在3025房间。干吗问这个？

A: 我想现在还能不能选她的课。

B: 但都已经期中考试了！

A: 我的意思是我能不能只考试就拿学分。

B: 我觉得不行。她可不是那么好说话的。



27. I would like to... 我想……



1. **I would like to** invite you to my home.

我想邀请你来我家。

2. **I would like to** go hiking with you.

我想和你一起去远足。

3. **I would like to** go driving with you.

我想和你一起去兜风。

4. **I would like to** have dinner with you.

我想和你一起吃晚餐。

5. **I would like to** show you how to use this copy machine.

我愿意教你如何使用这台复印机。



Dialogue 1

A: Here is a little gift from my company.
Would you like to open it?

B: Oh, thank you. It's a beautiful piece of embroidery.

A: You are welcome. When will you come



again?

B: Very soon probably. If you are available, please come to my country. **I would like to** return the favor there.

A: Thank you.

A: 这是我们公司的一点小礼物。你想打开看看吗?

B: 哦, 谢谢。这个刺绣真漂亮。

A: 不客气。你什么时候再来?

B: 可能很快。如有机会来我们国家, 我想在那里报答你对我的热情款待。

A: 谢谢。

Dialogue 2

A: Manager, **I would like to** discuss something with you.

B: What's the matter?

A: I feel quite uncomfortable to make this request.



B: That's fine. Please tell me!

A: Could you give me a raise?

B: Well, I will talk with the boss about this.

A: I appreciate your help.

A: 经理，有事想和您商量一下。

B: 什么事？

A: 请求您实在不好意思。

B: 没有关系，请说！

A: 能不能给我加薪？

B: 嗯，我会和老板商量一下。

A: 那就拜托了。

28. I'm looking forward to... 我期待着……



1. **I'm looking forward to** seeing you.

我期望见到你。

2. **I'm looking forward to** hearing from you.

我期待收到你的信。

3. **I'm looking forward to** going to the movies.

我期待去看电影。

4. **I'm looking forward to** having dinner with you.

我期待和你共进晚餐。

5. **I'm looking forward to** spending summer vacation in New York.

我期待在纽约过暑假。

Dialogue 1

A: Nice to meet you. I am Fang Ning.

B: Nice to meet you, too. I am George.

A: You know, I've heard a lot about you.

B: Really? I hope it's not anything bad about me.

A: Not at all. Everything I've heard has been good! We're going to be working together this time.

B: **I've been looking forward to** it.



A: 很高兴见到你。我叫方宁。

B: 很高兴见到你。我叫乔治。

A: 你知道, 我听说过许多关于你的事情。

B: 真的吗? 希望不是关于我的坏事情。

A: 一点也不是。我听到的都是关于你的好事情! 这次我们要一起工作了。

B: 我一直盼望着有这么一天。



Dialogue 2

A: I've just called to say goodbye.

B: When are you leaving?

A: My ship sails at 6: 30.

B: Well, bye - bye and have a good voyage.

A: Bye! **Look forward to** seeing you again soon.

A: 我打电话是来告别的。

B: 你什么时候走?

A: 我乘的船六点半开。

B: 噢, 再见, 祝你一路顺风。

A: 再见! 希望不久能再见到你。

29. If I were you, ...

如果我是你的话, ……



1. **If I were you**, I would value this chance.

如果我是你, 我就会珍惜这个机会。

2. **If I were you**, I would stop playing computer games.

如果我是你, 我就不会再玩电脑游戏。

3. **If I were you**, I'd take a shower every day.

如果我是你的话, 我就会每天洗个澡。

4. **If I were you**, I would drive a motorcycle to work.

如果我是你, 我就会骑摩托车去上班。

5. **If I were you**, I'd be very happy to have such a rich father.

如果我是你, 我会很高兴有一个这么有钱的爸爸。

Dialogue 1

A: If you were me, would you study English or go to the movies?

如果你是我，你学英文还是看电影？

B: **If I were you**, I'd definitely study English.

如果我是你，我一定学英文。

A: Why?

为什么？

B: Because your grades in English are bad, and the movie is not good.

因为你的英文成绩不好，而且这部电影不好看。

Dialogue 2

A: **If I were you**, I would not lose my patience with my child.

如果我是你的话，我就不会对着我的小孩发脾气。

B: Do you think I am impatient?

你认为我很没耐心吗？

A: Yes, I do. You shout at your daughter everyday.

我觉得是。你成天对着你的女儿大喊大叫。

B: Shut up. Just shut up, or I'll shout at you, too.

闭嘴。快闭嘴，不然我也会对着你大喊大叫。

30. It might be a good idea... 是个好主意……



1. **It might be a good idea** to have someone type my letter.

请人帮我打印信件可能是个好主意。

2. **It might be a good idea** to set a goal for next year.

为明年定个目标可能是个好主意。

3. Then **it might be a good idea** to wait a while.

那么等一阵子可能比较好。



4. **It might be a good idea** to buy a house instead of renting one.

不租房而买房可能是个好主意。

5. **It might be a good idea** to have someone fix my watch at a jeweler.

叫钟表商帮我修一下手表可能是个好主意。



Dialogue 1

A: Mr. Simpson, have you got any idea where you would like to go this summer?

辛普森先生，你打算今年夏天去哪儿度假？

B: I was thinking I might travel to Hangzhou.

我一直打算去杭州度假。

A: Well, Hangzhou is certainly a great attraction. But I don't think **it's a good idea** to travel south in summer.

哦，杭州的确是个不错的旅游胜地。但我不认为夏天去南方度假是个好主意。

B: Oh... you are probably right. Where do

you suggest?

哦……或许你是对的。你建议去哪里呢？

A:What about a visit to Yantai in Shangdong province? I'm sure you will enjoy yourself there.

去山东烟台如何？我相信你在那里一定会过得很愉快的。

B:But if I spend all the time on the beaches, I may get bored.

如果把全部假期都用在海边的话，我可能会觉得乏味的。



Dialogue 2

A:It might be raining tomorrow.

明天有可能会下雨。

B:Yes, I hear there's rain in the forecast.

是啊，我听到天气预报说有雨。

A:Don't you think **it might be a good idea** to wash the car now?

难道你不觉得现在去洗车比较好吗？



B: No, it's raining and the car won't stay clean.

不要吧，就要下雨了，车子不会保持洁净的。

31. It's a good thing... 还好……



1. **It's a good thing** to give a two-week notice.

还好提前了两个星期通知。

2. **It's a good thing** that I brought my mobile phone.

还好我带了手机。

3. **It's a good thing** that I have this credit card.

还好我有这张信用卡。

4. **It's a good thing** that I studied for this exam.

还好我为这次考试学习了。

5. **It's a good thing** that I have already given Hans a bath.

还好我已经给汉斯洗过澡了。



 *Dialogue 1*

A: I don't understand why we must learn German?

我不明白我们为什么要学习德语。

B: Why do you say so? **Isn't it a good thing to** learn more languages?

你为什么这么说不呢？多学语言不好吗？

A: Since English has been gradually becoming a universal language, it's useless to study other languages.

既然英语已经逐渐成为一种全球通用的语言，学习其他的语言就没用了。

B: No, I don't think so really. At least, when you learn another language, you can enjoy the literature of that nation.

不，我真的不这样认为。至少，当你学习了另一种语言，你能更好地欣赏那个民族的文学。

Dialogue 2

A: Did you hear that Marion lost her job?

你听说莫里昂丢了她的工作吗?

B: Why did she lose her job?

她为什么丢了工作?

A: The company was sold to a large foreign company.

公司被卖给另一个外国大公司了。

B: **It's a good thing** that she saved her money.

还好她把钱存了下来。

32. It reminds me ...

我想到了……



1. **It reminds me** of my grandma.

让我想起了我的奶奶。

2. **It reminds me** of the time we had a blizzard in 1995.

让我想起了1995年我们遇到暴风雪的那段日子。

3. **It reminds me** of the 18th Century French paintings.

让我想起了十八世纪的法国油画。

4. **It reminds me** of the first time I was in an airplane.

让我想起了我第一次在飞机上。

5. **It reminds me** of a typical American train station.

让我想起了美国的火车站。

Dialogue 1

A: How do you like your roommate?

你觉得你的室友怎么样？

B: Well, she is kind of noisy and she likes to party too much.

哦，她有点吵闹而且太喜欢狂欢了。

A: But isn't she a considerate roommate at least?

但至少她是一个体贴的室友，不是吗？

B: Not really, she is too messy and she



keeps me up late at night.

不见得，她太不爱干净了而且夜里搞得我不能睡觉。

A: Are you going to room with her next year?

你明年还要跟她住吗？

B: I think so. She **reminds me of** my sister.

我想会。她让我想起我姐姐。



Dialogue 2

A: Who is that beautiful girl with long blonde hair?

那个有着长长的金黄色头发的漂亮女孩是谁？

B: Oh, you mean the one at the bus stop?

哦，你说在公共汽车站的那个啊？

A: Yeah, that girl. She **reminds me of** my first girl friend, Lisa Jones.

是啊，那个女孩。她让我想起了我的第一个女朋友，丽莎·琼斯。

B: Believe it or not. She is Lisa's daughter,
Samantha!

信不信由你。她是丽莎的女儿，萨曼莎！

33. It seems to me...

我觉得好像……



1. **It seems to me** that he likes drinking.

我觉得他好像喜欢喝酒。

2. **It seems to me** that he wants a
Japanese girl friend.

我觉得他好像想交个日本女朋友。

3. **It seems to me** that he would like to
go back home.

我觉得他好像想要回家。

4. **It seems to me** that we need more
discussion about that thing.

我觉得我们似乎需要多讨论那件事。

5. **It seems to me** that he is selfish.

我觉得他好像很自私。

Dialogue 1

A: We're going to need someone to replace Mike after he retires, you know.

你知道，迈克退休后我们需要一个人来接替他。

B: What do you think of Larry? He's a go-getter.

你看劳利怎么样？他不错。

A: Hmm, he is a good choice. But let me warn you, Frank **seems to** think he's in line for Mike's position. He will probably be very upset...

嗯，他是一个人选。但我提醒你，弗兰克似乎一直在等麦克的职位。他可能会不高兴的……

B: Yeah, I thought about that, too. That may be a problem...

是啊，我也想到了。那也许是个问题……

 *Dialogue 2*

A: Something is wrong with your product.

你们的产品有些问题。

B: I'm sorry to hear that. It's hard to believe. What is the problem? We'll send a representative to check the cause. Please explain to him what the trouble is.

对这件事我很抱歉。真难以置信。问题是什么呢？我们会派一位代表去检查一下原因。请向他说明问题的所在。

A: All right, but there **seems to** be a problem with the packing. The packing seems to be too crude.

好的，不过好像是包装上有问题。包装看上去太粗糙了。

B: Is that so? Please accept our apologies for this problem.

是这样吗？如果是这个问题，请接受我们的道歉。



34. It looks... 这看起来……



034

1. **It looks** very nice.

看起来很漂亮。

2. **It looks** like a bird.

看起来像只鸟。

3. **It looks** like Manhattan.

看起来像是曼哈顿。

4. **It looks** like a picture.

看起来像幅画。

5. **It looks** as if it's going to rain.

看起来像要下雨了。



Dialogue 1

A: It is a warm day, isn't it?

天气不错，是吧？

B: Yes, **the weather looks** pretty good.

是的，真不错。

A: How time flies! Spring is around the corner. Listen! The birds are singing



everywhere and the flowers are blooming.

时间过得真快！春天就到了。听！鸟儿们四处欢唱，花儿们遍地盛开。

B:I'm so glad that my favorite season is coming. What about going out to travel?

真高兴我最喜欢的季节就要来了。出去旅游怎么样？

A:That's what I was thinking about.

这正是我所想的。

Dialogue 2

A:Good morning, Mr. Steven.

早上好，史蒂芬先生。

B:Good morning, Miss Li.

早上好，李小姐。

A>Please take a seat and go over the draft of the contract.

请坐，浏览一下合同草案吧。

B:Thanks.

谢谢。



A:What would you like, Chinese tea or coffee?

想喝点什么，中国茶还是咖啡？

B:Thank you. I'd like a cup of Chinese tea, please.

谢谢。我喜欢中国茶。

A:Finished?

看完了吗？

B:Yes. **It looks** workable, where shall I put my signature?

是的。看起来没问题，我在哪儿签字？

A:Here, and here. We'll sign two originals, each in Chinese and English. Both are equally effective.

这里，这里。我们要签署两份，中英文各一份。二者均有效。

B:Fine.

好的。

35. It depends on... 这取决于……



1. **It depends on** the weather.

这取决于天气。

2. **It depends on** which day you want to go.

这取决于你想哪一天走。

3. **It depends on** how much time I have today.

这要看今天我有多少时间。

4. **It depends on** the location of the apartment.

这要看公寓的地理位置。

5. **It depends on** the number of people who want to go.

这取决于要去的人数。

 *Dialogue 1*

A: Mary, could you do me a favor?

玛丽，你可以帮我一个忙吗？

B: **That depends on** what it is.



什么事?

A:I need you to find John and ask him if the proposal is complete yet.

我要你去找约翰，问他方案做完了没有。

B:No problem. Do you want me to have him call you?

没问题。你要我叫他打电话给你吗?

A:No, just let me know what he tells you.

不需要，我只要知道他告诉你什么就行了。



Dialogue 2

A:Are they colored or black and white?

它们是彩色的还是黑白的?

B:**That depends on** you.

随你定。

A:I'd like them all colored except those on newspaper.

除了报纸上的之外，我想全用彩色的。

B:All right. Any other requirements?

好的。还有其他要求吗?



A: The designs must be novel and appealing to the eye. The printing should be phototype.

设计一定要新颖、醒目。印刷应采用照相制版。

36. It sounds... 听起来……



1. **It sounds** interesting.

听起来很有趣。

2. **It sounds** like a good idea.

听起来似乎是个好主意。

3. **It sounds** like it might be fun.

听起来可能很好玩。

4. **It sounds** like you have a cold.

听起来你好像感冒了。

5. **It sounds** like you enjoyed it.

听起来你好像蛮喜欢的。

Dialogue 1

A: I need some feedback on the presentation I gave.

我刚做的简报需要一些意见。

B: It was good overall. But you need to make some small changes.

它整体来讲是好的。不过你还需要做一些小小的更改。

A: What would you suggest?

你建议怎么做呢?

B: I would put the production information before the cost so that **it sounds** justified.

我会把产品介绍放在价格之前，让它听起来比较合理一点。

Dialogue 2

Where is that memorandum?

那份备忘录哪儿去了?

What's the subject of the memorandum?

是关于什么内容的备忘录?

It's about the changes in the accounting procedures.

关于清账程序改革的。

That sounds important. What kind of changes are they?

还挺重要的。是什么样的改革？

Well, that's the trouble. I can't remember exactly. I didn't read the memorandum very carefully.

唔，这正是麻烦所在。我记不清了。我没有仔细去读。

37. Let's... 咱们……



1. **Let's** go home, shall we?

咱们回家，好吧？

2. **Let's** take a little walk.

咱们去散步吧。

3. **Let's** have a conversation.

咱们聊聊天吧。



4. **Let's** get something to eat.

咱们找点东西来吃吧。

5. **Let's** change the subject.

咱们换个话题吧。



Dialogue 1

A: Hi, Lillian. Any plan for tonight?

喂，莉莲。晚上有什么安排吗？

B: I want to watch TV at home.

我想在家看电视。

A: Why not do something special? What about basketball?

为什么不做些特别的事情呢？打篮球怎么样？

B: I'm sorry. I'm so tired that I can't move.

抱歉。我累得都不能动了。

A: OK. Then **let's** just stay at home and enjoy movies.

好吧。那么我们就待在家里看电影吧。

 *Dialogue 2*

A: Miss Kate, would you please sit here?

凯特小姐，请这边坐。

B: Thanks, Mr. Li. It's very kind of you to invite me.

谢谢李先生。谢谢您请我来。

B: It's my honor. Well, Miss Kate, would you like to have a drink? Beer or Mao-tai?

这是我的荣幸。凯特小姐，您喝点什么？啤酒还是茅台？

A: I think I will have the famous Mao-tai. I know it's the best liquor in the world.

我想还是点有名的茅台吧。我知道这是世界上最好的白酒。

B: Yes, indeed. Now, Miss Kate, **let's** toast the success of our cooperation and your health.

确实是。凯特小姐，为我们的合作，为您的健康，干杯。



38. Let me... 让我……



1. **Let me** take a picture for you.

让我帮你拍照。

2. **Let me** explain why I was late.

让我解释迟到的理由。

3. **Let me** check it.

让我检查一下。

4. **Let me** see you off at the airport.

让我送你到机场。

5. **Let me** show you the way.

让我告诉你怎么走。



Dialogue 1

A: Do you need any help?

你需要帮忙吗?

B: Not right now, I am just looking.

现在不需要, 我只是到处看看。

A: What are you looking for?

你在找什么?



B:I'm looking for a red skirt.

我在找一条红色的裙子。

A:**Let me** show you one.

让我拿一条给你看。

B:Thank you.

谢谢你。

Dialogue 2

A:Are you free tonight?

您今晚有空吗?

B:I'm not sure, but **let me** check my calendar. Ah, no, I have nothing to do tonight.

我现在还不清楚，不过让我查一下工作日历。没有，今晚我没有任何安排。

A:Great! Mr. Green has asked me to come over to invite you to the banquet that will be held in your honor at the Hongxing Hotel at 7:00 this evening.

太好了！格林先生要我来此请您参加今晚7



点在红星饭店为您举行的宴会。

B: How nice of him! I'll be delighted to go.

格林先生太客气了！我很高兴参加。

39. May I...? / Can I...?

我可以……？ / 我能够……？



1. **May I** have your name?

你能告诉我你的名字吗？

2. **May I** take a message?

我可以帮你转告吗？

3. **May I** open the window?

我能把窗户打开吗？

4. **May I** use this telephone?

我能用这部电话吗？

5. **May I** use your bathroom?

我能用你的浴室吗？



Dialogue 1

Excuse me, may I use your computer?

对不起，我可以用你的电脑吗？



Yes, please. What's wrong with yours?

可以。你的电脑怎么了？

It broke down this morning.

今早坏了。

Can they fix it today?

他们今天能修好吗？

I think so.

我想是的。

Dialogue 2

Good morning.

早上好。

Good morning. Can I help you?

早上好。有什么需要帮助的吗？

I have read your advertisement in today's *China Economy*. I am applying for the position of Market Manager.

我在今天的《中国经济》报上看到你们公司的招聘启事。我来是想应聘市场部经理的职位。



Welcome. Can I ask who you are?

欢迎你来到这里。能认识一下吗？

I am Wang He. Here is my resume.

我叫王和。这是我的简历。

40. Not... until... 直到……才……



1. I **didn't** get home **until** midnight.

半夜我才到家。

2. I **didn't** plan to go **until** she invited me again.

直到她又邀请了我一次，我才打算去。

3. I **didn't** go to college **until** I was twenty-one.

我直到二十一岁才开始上大学。

4. The train **didn't** start moving **until** 3:00 AM.

火车凌晨三点才开走。

5. I **did not** eat anything **until** now.

到现在我才吃点东西。

 *Dialogue 1*

A:When will I get a raise?

我什么时候才能加薪?

B:In six months or so.

大概六个月以后吧。

A:You said the same thing six months ago.

六个月前你就这么说了。

B:Did I? Well, anyway, you'll get the raise when the economy picks up.

我说过了吗? 哦, 总之, 经济复苏后我就给你加薪。

A:You mean I won't get a raise until the recession ends?

你的意思是经济萧条结束之前都不给我加薪吗?

B:Yes.

是的。

A:I get the message. I'm quitting!

我懂你的意思。我不干了!

Dialogue 2

Oh, Rich, I did not know you were so muscular. What kind of exercise do you do?

噢，里奇，我还不知道你这么健壮。你做些什么锻炼？

I do push-ups twice a week. Usually it takes me about thirty-five minutes to finish six hundred push-ups.

我一周做两次俯卧撑。通常我花三十五分钟左右能做完六百个俯卧撑。

Six hundred? My gosh! When did you start doing that?

六百个？天啦！你什么时候开始做这个的？

I **didn't** start doing push-ups **until** I was sixteen.

我十六岁才开始做俯卧撑。

41. **On second thought, ...**

再三考虑之后，……



1. **On second thought**, I will exchange more RMB for dollars.

再三考虑之后，我会把人民币多换些美元。

2. **On second thought**, I think this coat is too expensive.

再三考虑之后，我觉得这件大衣太贵了。

3. **On second thought**, we should buy her a nice gift.

再三考虑之后，我们应该给她买个好礼物。

4. **On second thought**, a trip to Harbin sounds exciting.

再三考虑之后，去哈尔滨旅行听起来很刺激。

5. **On second thought**, those shoes are a good bargain.

再三考虑之后，那些鞋子真便宜。

Dialogue 1

A: Excuse me, Miss. I'd like to order a bottle of beer and a medium pizza.

麻烦你，小姐。我想点一瓶啤酒和一个中份的比萨饼。

B: Yes, sir. Is there anything else you would like right now?

好的，先生。现在你还想要点什么吗？

A: **On second thought**, I will have a large pizza.

再三考虑之后，我还是要一个大份的比萨饼。

B: Yes, sir. That's a bottle of beer and a large pizza.

好的，先生。一瓶啤酒和一个大份的比萨饼。

Dialogue 2

A: I'm going to the gym to lift weights. Do you want to come?

我打算去体育馆练习举重。你想来吗？

B: No, thanks. I'm too tired. I'll want to

watch TV tonight.

不，谢谢。我太累了。今晚我想看电视。

A: Okay. Suit yourself.

好的。随你自己啦。

B: **On second thought**, I think I will go with you. I need a good work out.

再三考虑之后，我想我会跟你去。我需要好好锻炼一下。

42. Shall we...? 我们可以……?



1. **Shall we** go to lunch together?

我们可以一起去吃午饭吗?

2. **Shall we** finish the project tonight?

我们今晚可以完成这个项目吗?

3. **Shall we** go to the Disco this weekend?

这个周末我们一起去蹦迪，好吗?

4. **Shall we** take the first-class train?

我们可以坐特快列车吗?

5. **Shall we** call your friend?

我们可以打电话给你朋友吗?

Dialogue 1

Shall we call it a day?

咱们的谈判到此先结束吧?

Yes, all of us deserve a good rest after the marathon negotiations.

好的，我们经过马拉松式的谈判后都需要好好休息一下。

Let's dine out this evening. It's on me.

今晚我们一起吃晚饭吧。我请客。

Sounds great. Shall I call a taxi?

太棒了。我叫辆出租车吧?

No, we've got a car out there waiting in the parking line. Let's go right away, shall we?

不用，有车在等候我们。我们直接去，好吗?

OK.

好的。

Dialogue 2

Now we have finally reached a basic agreement on the problems that needed

be worked out.

现在，对一些需要解决的问题我们基本达成了协议。

Both of our parties have made a great effort.

为此我们双方都做出了很大的努力。

That's true. But **shall we** sign the contract now?

是的。我们现在可以签合同了吧？

Just a minute. Though everything seems clear, we'd better have another check, to avoid arguing over some minor problems in the days to come.

稍等一会儿。虽然看起来一切都清楚，但是为了避免将来在一些小问题上产生分歧，我们最好再检查一下。

43. The reason why... ……的原因是



1. **The reason why** I can't depend on him is that he never saves money.



我之所以不能依靠他是因为他从不存钱。

2. **The reason why** I didn't come over last Saturday was that I had to work.

星期六我之所以没有来是因为我得工作。

3. **The reason why** we don't like her is that she can be quite bossy.

我们不喜欢她的原因是她可能会很跋扈。

4. **The reason why** I was late is that I missed the bus.

我之所以迟到是因为错过了公交车。

5. **The reason why** I didn't call you is that I forgot it.

我之所以没有给你打电话是因为我忘了。

Dialogue 1

A: Do we have enough money for our trip?

我们有足够的钱旅行吗?

B: I think we have enough.

我认为够了。

A: **The reason why** we should take more money is that we might encounter unexpected difficulties. We should rely on ourselves.

我们应该多带些钱的原因是可能会碰到意想不到的困难。我们应该靠我们自己。

B: I understand.

我明白。

Dialogue 2

Danny, I can't believe you got divorced.

丹尼，我不相信你离婚了。

The reason is that she was quite bossy.

原因是她很跋扈。

Oh, what a poor guy you are!

哦，你真是个可怜的家伙！



44. There is no reason...

没有理由……



1. **There is no reason** to feel discouraged.

没有理由感到气馁。

2. **There is no reason** you should quit your job.

你没有理由辞职。

3. **There is no reason** why we can't send our son to nursery school.

我们没有理由不能送我们的儿子去托儿所。

4. **There is no reason** why they turned down your visa.

他们没有理由拒绝给你签证。

5. **There is no reason** why you can't try again.

你没有理由不能再试一次。



Dialogue 1

Sandra, this apartment is a total mess. When I agreed to be your roommate, I



told you that I want a tidy apartment.

桑德拉，这个房子一团糟。当我答应做你的室友时，我告诉过你，我要房间保持整洁。

Leslie, I am very busy at work. When I come home at the end of the day, I want to relax.

莱斯利，我工作很忙。当一天结束回来时，我想休息。

There is no reason why you cannot keep this small apartment in order!

你没有理由不能保持这个小房子井然有序！

I guess you're right. I know it is not my habit to keep anything straight. I should not be so lazy.

我猜你说得对。我知道我没有保持东西整齐这个习惯。我不该这么懒惰。

Dialogue 2

A: Are you going to take our son to the countryside this winter?

这个冬天你打算带我们的儿子去乡下吗？

B: Yes, I am. I'm his mom. **There is no reason** why I can't take my son to the countryside for Chinese New Year's Day, is there?

是的。我是他妈妈。我没有理由不能带我儿子去乡下过农历新年，是不是？

A: I'm afraid you shouldn't. Because your hometown is so cold, and there's no air conditioner in the house. Even for me, it's hard to stand.

恐怕你不应该。因为你的家乡很冷，而且房子里又没有空调。甚至对我来说，也是很难忍受的。

B: But our son is already two years old and he has never been to my hometown. We have a wood-burning stove. He will feel warm.

但是我们的儿子都已经两岁了，他还从未去过我家乡。我们有烧木材的火炉。他会感觉很暖和的。

45. There is... /There are... 有……



1. **There is** a post office behind this building.

这栋建筑物后面有个邮局。

2. **There is** a police box along this street.

沿这条街有一个警察岗亭。

3. **There is** a station around that corner.

在那个转角处有个车站。

4. **There is** something cold in the refrigerator.

冰箱里有些冰的东西。

5. **There are** coffee cups in the kitchen.

厨房里有些咖啡杯。



Dialogue 1

A: Could you check the flights leaving for New York in the late afternoon of the 8th, please?

能否请您查看一下有没有8日下午较晚时



候去纽约的航班？

B: There is a flight leaving at 17:45, arriving at New York Kennedy Airport at 18:45 local time. There are plenty of seats available on that flight.

有17:45起飞至纽约肯尼迪机场的航班，当地时间是18:45到达。那趟班机还有很多机票待售。

A: I think the 17:45 flight is suitable. Can I book a seat on it, please?

我想那趟17点45分的航班很合适。我能订一个位子吗？

B: Could I have your name, please?

你的名字？

A: It's Robert Wilson.

罗伯特·威尔逊。

B: First class or economy?

头等舱还是经济舱？

A: Economy, please.

经济舱。



 *Dialogue 2*

A: Hi, Mary. It's time to go home.

玛丽。该下班回家了。

B: Yeah. Let's go.

是呀。咱们走吧。

A: Do you have a date tonight?

今晚有约会吗?

B: No. What about you?

没有。你呢?

A: Neither do I. Let's go to the movies.

I hear **there is** a wonderful film playing recently.

我也没有。咱们去看电影吧。听说最近上映了一部精彩的电影。

B: OK. I agree. I'll call you later. See you.

我同意。过会儿给你电话。一会儿见。

A: OK. See you later.

好。一会儿见。



46. Thank you for... 谢谢你……



1. **Thank you for** lending me the videotape.

谢谢你借我录像带。

2. **Thank you for** sending me so many things.

谢谢你送我这么多东西。

3. **Thank you for** introducing her to me.

谢谢你把她介绍给我。

4. **Thank you for** giving me a lift.

谢谢你让我搭便车。

5. **Thank you for** your good advice.

谢谢你的忠告。



Dialogue 1

Sometimes my wife is very tiresome.

有时候我老婆很烦。

I think it's about time we've got to go.

我想我们该走了。



What? Already? Would you have more coffee?

哦？已经到时间了吗？你是不是还想再喝点咖啡？

I'd love to, but I have to get up early tomorrow.

我也想啊，但是明天还得早起。

Oh! I'm sorry. I wish you could stay.

哦！太遗憾了。真希望你能多待会儿。

Thank you for a very enjoyable evening.

今晚我们玩得很尽兴，谢谢你。

Don't mention it. I hope you can come again soon.

别客气。希望你不久后再次光临。

Dialogue 2

Thank you for seeing me off here, Miss Jane.

简小姐，谢谢你来送我。

It's my pleasure.

不客气。

Thank you for everything you've done for me during my stay in Beijing.

感谢你为我在北京停留期间所做的一切。

You're welcome. I hope you can come again to our next fair.

不用谢。我们下次举办展览会希望您还能参加。

Sure. Good-bye, Miss Jane.

当然。再见，简小姐。

Good-bye. Have a pleasant journey!

再见。祝您旅途愉快！

47. To tell you the truth,...

说实话,



1. **To tell you the truth**, I may go back to school to get a diploma.

说实话，我可能会重返学校拿个文凭。

2. **To tell you the truth**, she is already in her late fifties.

说实话，她已经五十好几了。

3. **To tell you the truth**, I was the one who broke the vase.

说实话，我就是那个打碎花瓶的人。

4. **To tell you the truth**, this medicine is not very helpful.

说实话，这药没有多大用处。

5. **To tell you the truth**, we are tired of your attitude.

坦率地说，我们对你的态度很厌烦。

Dialogue 1

Jessie, **to tell you the truth**, I'm tired of doing business.

杰西，跟你说实话，我厌倦做生意了。

I understand. There are always too many things to take care of.

我理解你。总是有太多的事情处理不完。

I really want to be alone, far away from the business world.



我真想一个人待着，远离生意圈。

Maybe you need a vacation.

也许你需要休假。

You've got it. How great it would be if there were no calls, no parties and no interruptions.

你说对了。如果没有电话，没有晚会，没有干扰，真是太棒了。

Sure.

当然。



Dialogue 2

I just finished this portrait of your cousin.

What do you think?

我刚完成你表姐的肖像画。你觉得怎么样？

I don't know what to tell you.

我不知道该说什么。

Just be honest with me. Do you like it?

你就老实说吧。你喜欢吗？

To tell you the truth, I think that

painting is awful!

坦率地说，我认为这幅画糟透了！

48. What do you think of...?

你觉得……怎么样？



1. **What do you think of** my new glasses?

你觉得我的这副新眼镜怎么样？

2. **What do you think of** the food here?

你认为这里的饭菜怎么样？

3. **What do you think of** the weather in Beijing?

你认为北京的天气怎么样？

4. **What do you think of** my girlfriend?

你认为我女朋友怎么样？

5. **What do you think of** the football game?

你认为这场足球赛怎么样？

Dialogue 1

A: Mr. Smith, is this the first time for you to come to Shenzhen ?

史密斯先生，你是第一次到深圳吗？

B: Yes. And it is the first time for me to come to China, too.

是的。这也是我第一次到中国。

A: Is it? Welcome to China. **What do you think of** our country?

是吗？欢迎你到中国来。你觉得我们国家怎么样？

B: To be frank, I didn't expect to see the economy of your country to be booming.
坦率地说，我没有预料到你们国家的经济正在蓬勃发展。

A: Thanks for saying so. How do you like the life here?

谢谢你这么说。你喜欢这儿的生活吗？

B: I've been here for two months, so far, so good.
我在这儿待了两个月，到目前为止还好。



Dialogue 2

A: **What do you think of** students having part-time jobs?

你对学生打工怎么看？

B: Well, I don't think it's a good idea.

我不觉得这是个好主意。

A: Why do you believe it is not a good idea?

你为什么认为这不是个好主意？

B: Well, because I think it will affect students' study since they have been over-burdened with much homework.

因为我觉得既然他们已经由于很多家庭作业而负担过重了，再打工会影响他们学习。

49. What...? 什么……？



1. **What** do you mean by that?

你说那话是什么意思？

2. **What** do you have in mind?

你心里在想什么？



3. **What** were you doing there yesterday?

昨天你在那里做什么?

4. **What** would you like to eat?

你想吃什么?

5. **What** made you so angry?

什么事使你这么生气?



Dialogue 1

May I come in?

我可以进来吗?

Come in! **What** do you want?

请进! 有什么事吗?

Mr. Smith, you know I've been working here for four years. I think I deserve a raise.

史密斯先生, 您知道我已经在这里工作四年了。我想我应该加薪。

Yes? But you are late almost every day.

那又怎样? 但是你几乎天天迟到。

I will pay attention to that.

我会注意的。



I will think about it.

我会考虑的。

Dialogue 2

Good afternoon, Mr. Green. I'm told that you've been waiting here for quite some time. Sorry to keep you waiting.

下午好，格林先生。我听说你在这里等我好长时间了，很对不起。

It doesn't matter. I know you are always very busy.

没关系。我知道你一直都很忙。

Is there anything urgent?

有什么紧急事情吗？

Well, things are like these. **What** are you going to do with that part of the goods that are damaged?

噢，事情是这样的。对那部分残损货物你们该如何处理？

Shall we return them to you, or hold them



for you to decide what to do with?

是退还给你们，还是留着听候你们处理？

If so, we agree to settle your claims.

如果是这样的话，我们同意理赔。

50. What kind of...? 哪种……?



050

1. **What kind of** music do you like?

你喜欢哪种音乐？

2. **What kind of** drink do you want?

你要哪种饮料？

3. **What kind of** movies do you like?

你喜欢哪种电影？

4. **What kind of** flower is this?

这是哪种花？

5. **What kind of** food do you like?

你喜欢哪种食物？



Dialogue 1

A: What's your occupation?



你的职业是什么？

B: I'm a business man.

我是商人。

A: **What kind of** business are you in?

你经营什么生意？

B: I own a gas station. **What line of**
work are you in?

我经营一个加油站。那你是干什么的？

A: I'm a government employee.

我是公务员。

B: Are you? Where do you work?

是吗？你在哪儿工作？

A: I work at the State Department.

我在国务院工作。

Dialogue 2

Hello, Dazhong Taxi Company. Can I help you?

你好，大众出租车公司。需要什么帮忙吗？

Yes. This is the secretary from Shanghai
Import & Export Corporation. I'd like to



rent a car for 3 days.

是的。我是上海进出口公司的秘书。我想租一辆车，租用三天。

What kind of car do you want?

您想租用什么样的车？

We need a minibus. How much does it cost each day?

我们想租一辆面包车。每天多少钱？

500 yuan per day. How would you pay?

By check or in cash?

每天500元。您想要如何付款？是用支票还是现金？

We'll pay by check and rent the car from tomorrow.

我们将用支票付款并从明天开始租用。

51. Which do you like better, A or B?

你最喜欢哪个，A 还是 B？



1. **Which do you like better**, coffee or black tea?



你比较喜欢咖啡还是红茶？

2. **Which do you like better**, red wine or white wine?

你比较喜欢红酒还是白酒？

3. **Which do you like better**, rock or classical music?

你比较喜欢摇滚乐还是古典音乐？

4. **Which do you like better**, blue or red?

你比较喜欢蓝色还是红色？

5. **Which do you like better**, summer sports or winter sports?

你比较喜欢夏天的运动还是冬天的运动？

Dialogue 1

A: **Which do you think** she would **like better**, going to the movies or going to a baseball game?

你觉得她是会比较喜欢去看电影还是去看棒球比赛？

B: Beats me. Can't you do both?



你考倒了我。你们不能两个都去吗？

A: No, we can't. Help me choose one.

不行。帮我选一个吧。

B: In that case, I think a baseball game beats the movies.

要是那样的话，我觉得看棒球比赛比看电影好。

A: All right. I'll take her to the baseball game.

那好。我就带她去看棒球比赛。



Dialogue 2

A: Miss Zhang, I have an important letter which I need you to prepare for me. Could you do it now?

张小姐，我有一封重要的信要你替我准备。你现在能做吗？

B: Sure. **Would you like** it typed or handwritten?

有空。你是要打印的还是手写的？

A: It is a business letter, so please type it on the company stationery.

这是一封商业书信，因此请将它打印在公司的信笺上。

B: All right. I'm ready now.

好的。我已准备好了。

52. Would you like to...?

你想……？



1. **Would you like to** go to the movies?

你想去看电影吗？

2. **Would you like to** go there?

你想去那吗？

3. **Would you like to** have some coffee?

你想喝些咖啡吗？

4. **Would you like to** dance with me?

你想和我一起跳舞吗？

5. **Would you like to** join us?

你想加入我们吗？

Dialogue 1

I want to travel around Europe for a week.
I know where I want to go, but I don't
know how to get there.

我想去欧洲旅行一星期。虽然我知道要去哪里，但我不知道怎么去。

Would you like to call my travel agent?

She can arrange an itinerary for you very nicely. Just tell her where you want to go.

你要不要打电话给我的旅行代办人？她可以帮你把行程安排得很好。只要告诉她你要去哪里。

Thanks. What's her phone number?

谢谢。她的电话号码是多少？

8868523.

8868523。

Dialogue 2

A: Hello! Laundry Service. What can I do for you?

这是洗衣房。您有何吩咐？

B: Hello! I wonder if I can get a suit pressed and some shirts laundered.

我想知道能不能把一套西装熨一下，还有几件衬衫要洗。

A: Certainly. When **would you like to** have the suit ready?

当然可以。您希望衣服何时熨好？

B: Before 5 p.m. I'll need it for the evening.
下午5点以前。我晚上要穿。

Sure. But you have to pay an extra fee in that case.

可以，但是你要另付费。

That's all right.

没问题

第四部分

脱口而出：交流无障碍



第一章 人间自有真情在

1. 家人团聚 Family reunion



Mother's love

Lillian: Morning.

Mom: Good morning, honey. Did you sleep well?

Lillian: Yeah, but I'm still tired.

Mom: Have some breakfast.

Lillian: I don't want to have it too early. It will make me feel sick.

Mom: And it will give you more energy.

Lillian: Maybe in a bit. I just want some coffee first.

Mom: Okay, I just made some. Help yourself. You have a long day today.

Lillian: Thanks...Ugh, don't remind me.

Mom: (laughs) Don't complain and just drink your coffee.

妈妈的爱

莉莲：早上好。

妈妈：早上好，宝贝。睡得还好吗？

莉莲：还好，但我还是很累。

妈妈：吃点早餐吧。

莉莲：我不想吃得太早了，这让我感觉不舒服的。

妈妈：这会给你更多的能量。

莉莲：那就过会儿吃吧。我想先喝点儿咖啡。

妈妈：好的，我刚好煮了点。你自己随便喝吧，今天可够你忙的。

莉莲：谢谢……啊，别让我想到这些。

妈妈：（笑）别发牢骚了，喝你的咖啡吧。

2. 择友需慎重 Choosing friends

Friendship standards



Jack: What kind of qualities do you look for in your friends?

Joan: I like to make friends with people who are open and friendly. These



people are usually active and fun to be with.

Jack: Sure. But sometimes those who are not open and active can be very good friends.

Joan: Of course. So that's why a person always has different kinds of friends in his life.

Joan: Yes. I like to make friends with those who I can get along well with.

Jack: Sure! Who will make friends with those he cannot get on well?

Joan: Oh, don't get me wrong. I'm just saying that maybe you don't have much in common, but you feel very comfortable when you are with each other. That's a great feeling.

Jack: I agree. But generally, I prefer to make friends with those who share similar interests with me.

We can do a lot of things together and it's great fun. I love spending time with my friends.

Joan: That certainly is good. But I think the more important thing about friendship is that you can share your happiness and sorrows; you can always help each other when in trouble; you can cheer each other up when disheartened.

Jack: Yes, that is true. So I think being a good friend means you have to be supportive, willing to help, honest, trustworthy and a good listener. These qualities are important in maintaining good friendships.

Joan: Absolutely. Everyone needs friends. Friendship plays an important role in our life.

Jack: I completely agree with you.



交友标准

杰克：你在朋友身上看重什么品质？

琼：我喜欢和开朗友好的人交朋友。这样的人通常都会比较活跃，跟他们在一起很有意思。

杰克：没错，但是有时候，那些不是很开朗活跃的人可以是非常好的朋友。

琼：当然。这就是为什么一个人在生活中会有不同的朋友。

杰克：是的。我喜欢跟那些我能相处得来的人交朋友。

琼：当然！谁会跟那些与自己相处不来的人交朋友呢？

杰克：不要误解我的意思。我是说你跟有些人可能并没有很多共同点，但是你跟他们在一起的时会感觉很舒服。这种感觉非常棒。

琼：我同意，但是一般来说，我更倾向于跟与我志趣相投的人交朋友。我

杰克：我们可以一起做许多事。这非常有意思。我喜欢和朋友在一起。

琼：这当然很好。但是我觉得友谊更重要的是要分享快乐，分担痛苦。有困难的时候互相帮助，失去信心的时候互相鼓励。

杰克：是的，没错。作为一个朋友，你需要能够给予支持，愿意提供帮助，诚实，可以信赖，并且是一个好的倾听者。这些品质对于维系友谊是非常重要的。

琼：绝对的。每个人都需要朋友。友谊在人生中的作用是巨大的。

杰克：我完全同意。

3. 期待爱情 Expecting love

Finding a Mr. right



Tina: Hi, Sally. Who was the boy with you just now?

Sally: Well, he is my boyfriend. I've decided to go steady with him.

Tina: So, you're quite sure he's your Mr. Right?



Sally: Yes. He's the just person I am dreaming of.

Tina: Can you tell me something about him? Such as what type of man he is?

Sally: In my eyes, he's a mature, stable, manly one. I believe someday I'll marry him.

Tina: Sounds nice! Congratulations for you finding your ideal partner. I can feel you're serious this time. May you be happy!

Sally: Thank you. But why don't you find a boyfriend now? You know most of the people at the same age of us all have friends.

Tina: Yes, you're right. But I still can't meet the right boy. To tell the truth I often feel lonely when I'm free.

Sally: Come on. Don't worry, you're so nice and feminine. You'll meet a

good boy someday who really loves you.

Tina: Thank you, I hope so.

寻找真命天子

蒂娜：嗨，萨利。刚刚和你一起的男孩是谁啊？

萨利：哦，他是我男朋友。我已经决定和他交往了。

蒂娜：那么，你确信他就是你想找的那个人？

萨利：是的。他就是我一直梦想着要找的人。

蒂娜：你能告诉我关于他的一些事吗？比如他是哪种类型的人？

萨利：在我眼里，他是一个成熟、踏实、阳刚的男子。我相信有一天我要嫁给他。

蒂娜：听起来不错！恭喜你找到了理想的另一半。我能感觉到你这次是认真的。祝你幸福！

萨利：谢谢。但是你现在为什么不找个

男朋友呢？要知道和我们同龄的人大部分都有对象了啊。

蒂娜：是啊，你说得对。但是我始终没有遇到合适的男孩。说实话当我独自一人时经常觉得很孤独。

萨利：没事的。别急，你是那么漂亮温柔的女孩。总有一天你会遇见真正爱你的男孩的。

蒂娜：谢谢，希望如此。

4. 享受单身 Enjoying single

Enjoying single



Jack: Man, I'm tired of being single.

Tony: Why not go out more often?

Jack: I don't know. I'm not feeling motivated lately, I guess.

Tony: Maybe you should try out those online dating websites.

Jack: I thought only creepy people joined those.

Tony: Nah, I don't think so. A lot of guys

sign up for meeting new friends. I think there are a few free ones, too.

Jack: Do you think I could find a girl through that?

Tony: Maybe, but you could at least get some practice talking to girls.

Jack: Sure, I guess. And after I'm on the website for a while, I could do a speed dating program.

Tony: No, only creepy people go speed dating.

Jack: (laughs) Whatever, man.

享受单身

杰克：哥们儿，我厌倦单身了。

托尼：你为什么不经常出去走走呢？

杰克：我不知道，我只是最近感觉没什么激情。

托尼：也许你可以试试网上约会的网站。

杰克：我觉得只有那些古怪的家伙才参加那些网上约会。

托尼：不，我不这么认为。一般很多人注册这种网站。我想那里面也会有一些单身人士。

杰克：你觉得我通过那个能找到女朋友吗？

托尼：有可能，但是至少你能练习一下如何与女孩们交流。

杰克：嗯，我想是的。而且等我熟悉了网站之后，也许我就能速配了。

托尼：别啊。只有古怪的家伙才这么做。

杰克：（笑）无所谓了，伙计。

5. 鼠标爱情 Cyber love

Cyber love



Linda: Hey, what are you doing?

Lillian: Waiting for someone.

Linda: You mean the boy you met on MSN?

Lillian: You're right. He is so funny and I think I'm in love with him.

Linda: You must be joking! You can't fall in love with someone you've

never met!

Lillian: I know, but I keep thinking of him every day. And I get really depressed when he's not online.

Linda: I think it's just a crush. You can't be serious.

Lillian: Well, this might be silly. But I can't get him off my mind. And I can't help missing him.

Linda: Did you tell him?

Lillian: Yes. He said I'm his dream girl.

Linda: You shouldn't take it too seriously. It might be a lie.

Lillian: I know. I can't tell whether he's serious or not, so I need your advice.

Linda: I think you should enlarge your circle of real life friends, and then the right person will come along.

网络恋情

琳达：嗨，你在干什么呢？

莉莲：等某人现身呢。

琳达：你是说你在**MSN**上认识的那个男孩吗？

莉莲：对，他很有趣，我想我已经爱上他了。

琳达：你在开玩笑吧，你从来没有见过他，怎么会爱上他呢？

莉莲：我知道，但是我每天不停地想他。他不在线上时，我就很沮丧。

琳达：我想你只是一时迷恋。你不会是认真的吧？

莉莲：也许有点傻，但是我满脑子都是他。我不停地想他。

琳达：那你告诉他了吗？

莉莲：告诉他了，他说我正是他想找的女孩。

琳达：你别太当真了。也许他在骗你。

莉莲：我知道。我就是不知道他是不是认真的，所以才需要你的意见。

琳达：我觉得你应该扩大你现实生活中的朋友圈，合适的人一定会出现的。

注释：

depressed /dɪ'prest/

a. 沮丧的, 消沉的, 忧郁的

crush /krʌʃ/

n. 迷恋; 迷恋的对象

enlarge /ɪn'la:dʒ/

vt. 扩大; 扩展

circle /'sə:kl/

n. (具有共同兴趣、利益的人们所形成的)圈子;(活动等的)范围; ……界

6. 爱情没有国界 Mixed marriage

Mixed marriage



Susan: If you can choose, will you marry a foreigner or a Chinese?

Jenny: Why? Did Tom pop the question?

Susan: Not yet. But I wonder if I can get my parents' consent.



Jenny: Let me guess, your parents want you to marry a Chinese man, right?

Susan: You are right. It is giving me a real headache. I feel like I'm between a rock and a hard place.

Jenny: I used to have the same problem when I was with my ex.

Susan: Oh, how did you deal with it?

Jenny: I just let it go and continued dating with my Korean boyfriend. But finally we broke up.

Susan: Oh, it's a pity. What was the matter?

Jenny: Simple. We had personality clashes and there were too many cultural differences.

Susan: Like what?

Jenny: He hoped to live in the Korean way and asked me to give up working and stay at home to take

care of the family.

Susan: Oh, I see. In their culture women should put family first.

Jenny: Yes, he said it would be better for me and for the whole family. But I simply can not quit my job.

Susan: So that's why it's hard to have a happy marriage with a foreigner.

Jenny: Not really. There are many successful mixed marriages around us.

跨国婚姻

苏珊：如果让你选的话，你想嫁给中国人还是外国人？

珍妮：为什么这么问？汤姆向你求婚了吗？

苏珊：没有，我不知道我父母是否同意。

珍妮：我猜猜，你父母一定是想让你嫁给中国人，对吗？

苏珊：是呀，我正头疼呢，我觉得左右为难。

珍妮：我和以前的男朋友谈恋爱时，也

遇到了同样的问题。

苏珊：那你怎么解决的？

珍妮：我就顺其自然，继续和我的韩国男朋友约会，但是后来我们还是分手了。

苏珊：太可惜了，为什么呀？

珍妮：很简单，我们性格不合，双方的文化也有很多不同之处。

苏珊：比如呢？

珍妮：他希望我们过韩式的生活，要求我放弃工作，待在家里照顾家人。

苏珊：这样啊，在他们的文化里，女性应该以家庭为重。

珍妮：是呀，他说这样对我、对家里都好。但是我就是不想辞掉工作。

苏珊：所以和外国人结婚，很难幸福。

珍妮：也不一定，我们周围不也有很多成功的例子嘛。

注释：

pop

/pɒp/

vt. 突然提出(问题)

consent

/kən'sent/

vi. 同意,赞成,答应

ex /eks/ *n.* 表示"以前的"

headache /'hedeɪk/ *n.* 头痛

personality /,pə:sə'nælətɪ/

n. 个性,性格

quit /kwɪt/ *vt.* 放弃

deal with 处理

let it go 顺其自然

cultural difference 文化差异

break up 分手

put family first 以家庭为重

mixed marriage 跨国婚姻

give up 放弃

clash /klæʃ/

n. 冲突;不协调

7. 花前月下 Being in love

Talking about date



Fiona: I heard you're going out with John?

Jane: Yes. To be frank, I really love him



to death.

Fiona: You're so lucky!

Jane: Why do you say that?

Fiona: Why? Are you kidding me? A guy like him is hard to find. Few men are so caring, so patient and, did I mention, he's a hottie?

Jane: You really think so?

Fiona: Totally! I'm saying it from the bottom of my heart! And it's obvious that he's head over heels in love with you, too.

Jane: I sure hope so!

谈论约会

菲奥纳：听说你在跟约翰约会？

简：是啊。说实话，我爱死他了。

菲奥纳：你好幸运啊！

简：为什么这么说？

菲奥纳：为什么？你在开玩笑吧？像他那样的男人多难找啊。很少有男人这么会关心人，这么耐心。而

且，我说过没有，他很帅哦。

简：你真这么想？

菲奥纳：当然！我可是发自肺腑的。而

且，很明显他也疯狂地爱着你。

简：真是这样就好啦！

注释：

frank /fræŋk/

*a.*坦白的；直率的；真诚的

death /deθ/

*n.*死，死亡

patient /'peɪʃənt/

*a.*有耐心的，能忍受的，能容忍的

mention /'menʃən/

*vt.*提到，说起；提名表扬

obvious /'ɒbvɪəs/

*a.*明显的；显著的；平淡无奇的

8.单膝跪地 Marriage proposal

Marriage proposal



Jack: I wanted to make tonight extra special.



Amy: Well, it was amazing, thank you. Why did you want to make it “extra special” ?

Jack: Because I want to ask you something really important.

Amy: You do?

Jack: Yeah. I love you so much. You and I are happy together, and I want that to last forever. Will you marry me?

Amy: I love you too, Jack. Yes, I'll marry you!

Jack: I can't wait to start the rest of our lives together.

Amy: Me too. I'm so happy.

求 婚

杰克: 我想让今晚变得格外特别。

艾米: 哦, 太好了, 谢谢你。你为什么想让今晚变得“格外特别”呢?

杰克: 因为我想问你一些特别重要的事情。



艾米：真的吗？

杰克：是啊，我是那么爱你。我们在一起很开心，我想让这种快乐持续到永远。你愿意嫁给我吗？

艾米：我也爱你，杰克。愿意，我愿意嫁给你！

杰克：我都等不及想与你共度余生了。

艾米：我也是。我好幸福。

注释：

extra /'ekstrə/

a. 额外的，外加的；*ad.* 特别地，非常地

special /'speʃəl/

a. 特别的，特殊的；专门的，专用的

amazing /ə'meɪzɪŋ/

a. 惊人的，令人吃惊的

together /tə'geðə/

ad. 一起，共同，协力

forever /fə'revə/

ad. 永远



9. 分手的痛 Breaking up



Breaking up

Lucy: We need to talk.

Jack: What is it?

Lucy: We have been fighting too much lately. All I do is make you sad, and vice versa.

Jack: Yeah, I know. We used to be happy, but lately we have been making each other depressed.

Lucy: Exactly. That's why I think we should break up.

Jack: I knew you would say that...and I agree. But I really miss how we used to be.

Lucy: Me too. I just don't think we could ever go back to that moment. We have been through too much.

Jack: I know. So are we going to stay friends?

Lucy: I'd like that, but if you need a



break, I'll understand. You're still important to me .

Jack: Okay. We can try to stay friends.

Lucy: Thanks. I'm sorry about all this.

Jack: It's alright. I know this is for the best.

分手

露西： 我们需要谈谈。

杰克： 什么事呀？

露西： 我们最近总是吵架。我所做的好像只是让你心烦，反之亦然。

杰克： 是啊，我明白。我们曾经是那么快乐，但最近我们总是让对方郁闷。

露西： 确实如此。那就是我觉得我们应该分手的原因。

杰克： 我就知道你会那么说……我同意。但是我真的怀念以前的日子。

露西： 我也是。我只是觉得我们再也回不到以前那样了，我们经历得太多了。

杰克： 我明白。那我们还是朋友吗？



露西： 我很愿意，但如果你要和我断绝关系我也会理解的。你对我仍然很重要。

杰克： 好吧，我们可以试着做朋友。

露西： 谢谢。我对这一切很抱歉。

杰克： 没关系，我知道这是最好的办法。

注释：

vice /vaɪs/

prep. 代替,代理,取代; *a.* 副的;代替的

exactly /ɪg'zæktli/

ad. 确切地, 精确地, 完全地; 恰好地, 正好地

important /ɪm'pɔ:tənt/

a. 重要的,重大的

alright /'ɔ:l' rait/

a. 没问题地(的),健康地(的);极好地(的)

10.浪漫婚礼 Romantic wedding

Romantic wedding



Lillian: Hey! I want your opinion on something.



Jack: What is it?

Lillian: I have been thinking about the colors for the wedding and I want to ask you about them.

Jack: Alright, shoot.

Lillian: I was thinking we should do a white and baby blue color scheme, but now I think I would like a sea foam green color better with the white. What do you think?

Jack: I want it to be whatever you want.

Lillian: But I can't decide by myself!
Which color do you like better?

Jack: Well, if you're having trouble, why don't you pick out your flowers first and base the color on that?

Lillian: Oh, that's a pretty good idea, sweetie. Thanks! I think I'll go with the green then. Green will go with any flower.

Jack: Sounds great to me.

婚 礼

莉莲：嘿！我想就一些事情问问你的意见。

杰克：什么事？

莉莲：我一直在想婚礼的色彩，我想问一下你对此有什么意见。

杰克：好的，说吧。

莉莲：我原计划是白色和蓝色，但现在我觉得喜欢海泡绿和白色搭配。你觉得呢？

杰克：你想要什么颜色我都喜欢。

莉莲：但是我自己没法决定！你更喜欢什么颜色？

杰克：如果你难以决定的话，为什么不先挑选花，在花的颜色的基础上再决定呢？

莉莲：哦，亲爱的，这是个不错的主意。谢谢！我想到时候我会用绿色搭配，绿色和任何花都相配。

杰克：听起来不错。

注释：

shoot /ʃu:t/

vi. 说吧，请讲

baby blue 淡蓝色

scheme /ski:m/

n. 计划，方案

sea—foam green 海泡绿，浅绿色

11. 丁克家庭 Childless couples**Childless couples**

Merry: What's your opinion about childless couples? Will you choose to have no kids?

Judy: To be honest, I wouldn't.

Merry: Why? Do you have to make a choice now?

Judy: Not really. But it has puzzled me for a long time.

Merry: What's the puzzle?

Judy: My husband and I prefer to have no kids, but my mother-in-



law is very traditional and wants grandkids.

Merry: Oh, I see. I think the elder generation tend to think in a different way.

Judy: Yes. It seems she can never accept a childless marriage. We had a fight last night.

Merry: Oh, really? Maybe she is just eager to see her grandchildren.

Judy: But it's absolutely our own business to have a child or not.

Merry: Definitely.

Judy: You know, I often overhear our neighbor, the young couple, fighting about how to raise their kid and I really don't want kids to spoil our happiness.

Merry: Don't worry. I think in most cases, children are the glue that keeps a family together.

Judy: I guess you're right. But I still

prefer to have no child.

Merry: Sure. You can fully enjoy your time together.

丁克族

梅丽：你是怎样看待那些不生孩子的夫妻的？你打算生孩子吗？

朱蒂：说实在的，我不打算生孩子。

梅丽：为什么？你现在必须做出选择吗？

朱蒂：不是，只是这事困扰我很久了。

梅丽：那你到底烦什么呢？

朱蒂：我和我丈夫决定不生孩子，但是我婆婆很传统，很想抱孙子。

梅丽：哦，这样呀。我觉得老人们的想法总是跟咱们不一样。

朱蒂：是啊，可是我婆婆就是不能理解，为什么结了婚却不想生小孩。我们昨天还吵了一架。

梅丽：是吗？也许她只是抱孙心切吧。

朱蒂：但是生不生孩子，完全是我们自己的事。

梅丽：是呀。

朱蒂： 知道吗？我经常听见我们隔壁那对年轻的夫妻因为教育孩子而争吵。我真不想让孩子影响我们的婚姻幸福。

梅丽： 不要担心。大多数情况下，孩子还是家庭的黏合剂。

朱蒂： 好吧，但是我还是不想生小孩。

梅丽： 那你们就可以好好享受两人世界了。

注释：

childless /'tʃaɪldlɪs/

a. 无子女的;无后裔的

puzzle /'pʌzl/

vt. 使迷惑;使为难; *n.* 困惑,迷惑

generation /,dʒenə'reɪʃən/

n. 世代,一代

traditional /trə'dɪʃənəl/

a. 传统的;惯例的;因袭的

absolutely /'æbsəlu:tli/

ad. 绝对地,完全地

business /'bɪznɪs/

n. 职责,本分;分内事;权利

overhear /,əʊvə'hɪə/

vt. 偶然听到,无意中听到;偷听

raise /reɪz/

vt. 养育

spoil /spɔɪl/

损坏;糟蹋;搞糟

glue /glu: /

n. 胶,胶水

mother-in-law 婆婆

make a choice 作决定

have a fight 吵架

12. 结婚纪念日 Wedding anniversary

Wedding anniversary



Jack: Here is to our tenth wedding anniversary.

Lillian: I'm so moved that you still remember it.

Jack: Of course, I do. I can remember the moment you married me.



People's eyes are all focused on you.

Lillian: I miss my beautiful wedding dress.

Jack: You looked like an angel in it. I won't forget your beauty.

Lillian: I never regret getting married with you.

Jack: Yes. We are living a happy life from that time.

Lillian: I'm thankful for our son. He makes our life more interesting.

Jack: It's you who support me whenever I have trouble.

Lillian: We have indeed experienced many things together.

Jack: You are my immortality, my darling. I love you.

Lillian: I love you.

结婚纪念日

杰克：为我们的结婚十周年纪念日干杯。

莉莲：我真感动你还记得它。

杰克：当然。我记得你嫁给我的那刻，人们的目光全集中在你身上。

莉莲：我想念我漂亮的婚纱。

杰克：你穿着它像天使一样，我永远忘不了你那天的美丽。

莉莲：我从来没有后悔嫁给你。

杰克：是的，从那时起我们一直过得很幸福。

莉莲：我很感谢我们的儿子，他使我们的生活丰富多彩。

杰克：每当我有困难的时候都是你在支持我。

莉莲：我们确实一起经历了很多事情。

杰克：你是我的永恒，亲爱的，我爱你。

莉莲：我也爱你。

注释：

anniversary

/æni'və:səri/

n. 周年纪念日

immortality /,ɪmɔ:' tæli:tɪ/

n. 永恒

support /sə'pɔ:t/

vt. 支撑, 支托, 扶持

thankful /'θæŋkfəl/

a. 感谢的, 感激的; 欣慰的

interesting /'ɪntərɪstɪŋ/

a. 引起兴趣的; 令人关注的

indeed /ɪn'di:d/

a. 真正地, 确实, 实在

13. 办公室恋情 Office romance

What should I do?



Jack: How's it going?

Tom: I'm in a good mood today actually.

How about you?

Jack: To be honest, I'm a bit fed up.

Tom: What's wrong?

Jack: There's a girl in my company that I really like, but I always get shy when she is around.

Tom: I see! Do you want to ask her out?

Jack: Sure, but how?

Tom: You can ask her out for drink after work.

Jack: But for what reasons? She doesn't even know who I am.

Tom: Then you've got a lot of homework to do. You need to get her attention first.

Jack: Easier said than done.

Tom: You can start by meeting her at the bus stop and saying hello to her.

Jack: But I always get tongue-tied when I see her.

Tom: That's something you need to overcome. Men should make the first move as most of girls prefer being chased.

Jack: I see. I'll try.

Tom: Good luck!

我应该怎么做

杰克：最近怎么样呀？

汤姆：事实上，我今天心情很好，你呢？

杰克：说实话，我有点烦。

汤姆：怎么了？

杰克：我很喜欢公司的一个女孩，但我一看见她就不好意思。

汤姆：这样啊，你想约她出去吗？

杰克：当然了，但是怎么约呀？

汤姆：你可以约她下班后一起喝点什么。

杰克：但是找什么理由呢？她都不知道我是谁。

汤姆：那你要做的事情可就多了，你要先引起她的注意。

杰克：说起来容易。

汤姆：你可以先在公交车站偶遇她，然后和她搭讪。

杰克：但是我一见到她，就不知道说什么。

汤姆：一定要克服这个毛病。男生要主动，女孩喜欢被追。

杰克：知道了，我试试吧。

汤姆：祝你好运！

注释：

shy

/ʃaɪ/

a. 怕羞的，羞怯的

homework

/'həʊmwɜ:k/

n. 准备工作

notice

/'nəʊtɪs/

n. 注意；察觉

bus stop

公交车站

tongue-tied

/'tʌŋtaɪd/

a. (因胆怯等)说不出话的

overcome

/ˌəʊvə'kʌm/

vt. 战胜；克服

chase

/tʃeɪs/

vt. 追逐

make the first move 主动出击

14. 裸婚时代 Naked wedding

Naked wedding



John: Fancy meeting you here! How are you doing?

Lillian: I'm busy preparing for my wedding.

John: When is your wedding?

Lillian: Next month.

John: Really? What about the house?

Lillian: We didn't buy any. We decide to live with our parents.

John: Why not buy a house in advance?

Lillian: We don't have so much money. We love each other very much, so we plan to tie the knot.

裸 婚

约翰：真没想到在这里遇见你。你最近忙什么呢？

莉莲：我正忙着为婚礼做准备呢。

约翰：你的婚礼是什么时候？

莉莲：下个月。

约翰：真的吗？房子呢？

莉莲：我们没有买。我们决定跟父母住在一起。

约翰：为什么不先买套房子呢？

莉莲：我们没有那么多钱，我们很爱对方，所以我们决定先结婚。

注释：

fancy /'fænsɪ/

vt. 想象, 设想

prepare /prɪ'peə/

vt. 准备

15. 闪婚当道 Flash marriage

Flash marriage



Jason: Hey! Do you remember that Lillian girl I told you about?

Paul: Yeah. You two have been dating, right?

Jason: Yeah, but we decided to take it to the next level.

Paul: What do you mean, bro?

Jason: Lillian and I are getting married.

Paul: Married? Didn't you just meet her a few months ago?

Jason: Yeah, but we've become really close. I think we're going to Las Vegas to get married soon.



Paul: Well, man, I can't say I agree with your decision, but just do what makes you happy.

Jason: Thanks for the support. Lillian makes me happy and I can't wait to get married.

Paul: Yeah, I can see that. I really hope you two are great together.

Jason: Thanks, man! I'll send you pictures of the ceremony!

Paul: Catch you later. Have fun.

闪婚

约翰逊：嘿！你还记得上次我跟你说的那个叫莉莲的女孩吗？

保罗：是的。你们俩一直在约会，对吗？

约翰逊：是的，但是我们决定再向前进一步。

保罗：兄弟，你什么意思？

约翰逊：莉莲和我要准备结婚了！

保罗：结婚？你不是才认识她几个月吗？

约翰逊：是啊，但是我们已经很亲密了。我们打算过些日子在拉斯维加斯举行

婚礼。

保罗：哦，哥们儿，虽然我不认同你的决定，但是只要你开心就好。

约翰逊：谢谢你的支持。莉莲让我很开心，我都迫不及待想要跟她结婚了。

保罗：是啊，我能看出来。我希望你们俩在一起幸福。

约翰逊：谢谢，哥们儿！我会给你送婚礼照片的！

保罗：一会儿见。玩得开心点。

注释：

remember /rɪ'membə/

vt. 记得,想起,回忆起

decision /dɪ'sɪʒən/

n. 决定,决心;判断

support /sə'pɔ:t/

vt. 支撑,支持,扶持

ceremony /'serɪməni/

n. 仪式,典礼

第二章 绿色出行需引导

1. 地铁出行 Taking a subway

Taking a subway



John: Hello, Steve, did you have a good Monday?

Steve: Not at all. I had a bad time in the subway yesterday.

John: Really? What happened?

Steve: I got down the subway at 7:00 in the morning. I found the platform crowded with people. When a train pulled in, I was swept in by the rush of people behind.

John: Oh, poor guy.

Steve: It was even worse on the train. It was simply impossible to find a seat.

John: Yes, it's usually like this at about 7:00 in the morning. Many people go to work by subway.

Steve: Yeah, I did not expect that. And what's more, I overrode my station.

John: Really? I think they broadcast a notice at each station.

Steve: Yeah, I know, but it was too noisy and I didn't hear it.

John: That was really a bad experience.

Steve: I hope that it won't happen to me again.

乘坐地铁

约翰：喂，约翰，你周一过得愉快吗？

史蒂夫：一点儿都不愉快。昨天我在地铁上的经历非常糟糕。

约翰：是吗？怎么回事？

史蒂夫：我早上7点上了地铁。我发现站台上挤满了人。当一列火车进站时，我就被后面的人流挤上了车。

约翰：真可怜啊！

史蒂夫：在车上情况更糟糕。根本不可能找到座位。

约翰：是的。早上7点通常都是这样的。很多人都乘地铁去上班。

史蒂夫：是的。我没有料到。另外，我还坐过站了。

约翰：真的吗？你能听到地铁报站啊。

史蒂夫：是的，我知道，但是地铁里太吵了，我没有听到。

约翰：的确是糟糕的经历啊。

史蒂夫：希望我不会再遇到这种经历。

注释：

impossible /ɪm'pɒsəbl/

adj. 不可能的，做不到的

expect /ɪks'pekt/

v. 预期，盼望，期待

experience /ɪks'piəriəns/

n. 经历，经验

2. 人在囧途之迷路 Losing the way

I lost my way



Jennifer: Good morning, sir. I think I lost my way. Is the National

Library near here?

Passerby: No. The National Library is not around here.

Jennifer: How can I get there?

Passerby: It's far from here. You'd better take a bus.

Jennifer: Which bus should I take?

Passerby: You can take the bus No. 653. Come with me, I'm heading in the direction where you'll be catching the bus you want.

Jennifer: You are so kind. How many stops are there?

Passerby: Five stops.

Jennifer: By the way, do I need a transfer after No.653?

Passerby: No. No.653 will take you right there.

Jennifer: Thank you.



我迷路了

詹尼弗：早上好，先生。我想我是有点迷路了。国家图书馆是在这附近吗？

路人：不是。国家图书馆不在这儿。

詹尼弗：我怎么才能到那里？

路人：离这儿很远。你最好还是坐公共汽车去。

詹尼弗：我该坐哪路车？

路人：你可以坐**653**路。跟我走，我正要去那个方向。你可以在那儿坐车。

詹尼弗：您真是太好了。要坐几站？

路人：**5**站。

詹尼弗：顺便问一下，下**653**路车后还需要换车吗？

路人：不需要。**653**路车直接到那儿。

詹尼弗：谢谢。

3. 公交出行 Taking a bus

Which bus should I take?



Traveler: Excuse me, does this bus go to the National Library?

Driver: No. You'll have to get off at the bank, and take the bus No. 653.

Traveler: Thank you. How much is the fare to that stop?

Driver: One yuan.

Traveler: How many stops are there?

Driver: Three stops after this one.

Traveler: Could you please tell me when we get there?

Driver: Sure.

Traveler: By the way, do I need a transfer again after No.653?

Driver: No. No.653 will take you right there.

Traveler: Thank you.

我该搭乘哪路公共汽车？

旅客：打扰一下，这辆车去国家图书馆吗？

司机：不到。你得在银行那站下车，然后换乘**653**路车。

旅客：谢谢。到那站车票多少钱？



司机： 1元。

旅客： 要坐几站？

司机： 这站以后还有三站。

旅客： 到站时您能告诉我一下吗？

司机： 可以。

旅客： 顺便问一下，下车后还需要再换车吗？

司机： 不需要。653路车直接到那儿。

旅客： 谢谢。

注释：

fare /feə/ *n.* 票价

transfer /træns'fə: / *n.* 换车

be supposed to 应该

4. 交通事故 Traffic accident

Traffic accident



Maggie: Ambulance, please.

William: Ambulance. Do you get your bearing?

Maggie: I'm in a phone box outside No.255, Cranston Avenue.

William: What's the trouble, sir?

Maggie: There's been an accident.
Please send an ambulance at once.

William: Is there a doctor present?

Maggie: No, there's only me. The driver didn't stop. Is there anything I can do?

William: Don't move the patient. Try to stop the bleeding and keep the patient warm, but don't give him anything to eat or drink, OK?

Maggie: Right. Please hurry.

William: Don't worry. The ambulance is on its way now.

交通事故

马吉：我要救护车，劳驾。

威廉：这里是救护站。你在哪个方位？

马吉：我在克伦斯顿大道**255**号外面的电话亭里。

威廉：先生，出了什么问题？



马吉: 出了车祸。有人被轧着了, 正大量出血。请立即派一辆救护车来。

威廉: 有医生在现场吗?

马吉: 没有, 就我一个人。开车的人没有停下来。我能做什么吗?

威廉: 不要移动伤者。想办法止血。保持伤者的体表温度, 但不要给他任何吃或喝的东西, 明白吗?

马吉: 好的, 请赶快来。

威廉: 放心。救护车已经在路上了。

注释:

ambulance /'æmbjuləns/

n. 救护车

bearing /'beərɪŋ/

n. 方位, 方向

patient /'peɪʃənt/

n. 病人

5. 交通堵塞 Traffic jam



Traffic jam

Linda: What happened?

Mike: We're stuck again.

Linda: Why are we so unfortunate? I am really fed up with traffic jams.

Mike: Everybody here is in the traffic jam, not only you and me.

Linda: But it's the fifth time this week that we have been caught in the traffic jam.

Mike: It's no use complaining. It's the rush hour now.

Linda: I'll be late again. Why are there so many cars on the road?

Mike: Calm down, honey. Do you forget we are in New York?

Linda: There are always traffic problems in big cities.

Mike: So I've been used to the traffic jam.

Linda: I'll take the subway tomorrow. It is much faster than driving a car.

交通阻塞

琳达：出什么事了？

迈克：我们又塞车了。

琳达：我们怎么运气这么不好呢？我对堵车真是烦透了。

迈克：每个人都被堵在这里，不仅是你和我。

琳达：但是这周我们已经第五次遇到塞车了。

迈克：抱怨也没用。现在是上班高峰期。

琳达：我又要迟到了。路上怎么这么多车呢？

迈克：平静一点吧，亲爱的。你忘了我们是在纽约？

琳达：大城市总是有交通问题。

迈克：所以我已经习惯了塞车。

琳达：我明天去坐地铁。地铁比开车快多了。

注释：

stuck

/stʌk/

a. 不能动的

unfortunate

/ʌn'fɔ:tʃənɪt/

a. 不幸的

complain

/kəm'pleɪn/

v. 抱怨

6.问路 Asking the way



Asking the way

Dale: Excuse me. Could you tell me how to get to the Palace Museum?

Nancy: You can take Bus 5. The driver will tell you where to get off.

Dale: Yes, but I'm driving my own car.

Nancy: Oh, then you drive along this street, turn right at the third crossroad, then take the first left. Keep straight on until you see a road sign that says "Palace Museum", and then you follow the sign. It will direct you to the Palace Museum.

Dale: Drive along this street, turn right, turn left, keep straight, and then I'll see the road sign?

Nancy: That's right.

Dale: Are you sure that I won't bump into any one-way streets?



Nancy: Well,...I don't think you will....I don't see any car around here. Where is your car?

Dale: I parked it over there. You see.

Nancy: Oh, no. You'd better move it before a policeman sees you parking there.

Dale: Why? I don't see any "No Parking" signs.

Nancy: But you're parking in a bus zone.

Dale: Here comes a policeman. I'd better run... Thank you, miss...Oh, by the way, how long will it take for me to get to the museum?

Nancy: About half an hour.

Dale: Thanks again. You've been very helpful.

Nancy: Hurry up, or you'll get a ticket.

问路

戴特： 打扰一下。请问去故宫怎么走？

南希： 你可以乘5路车去。司机会告诉你



在哪里下车。

戴特：是的，但是我是自驾车。

南希：哦，那么你沿着这条街行驶，在第三个十字路口右转，然后左转。沿着这个一直走就会看到路标写着“故宫”，然后沿着这个路标，它会指引你到达故宫。

戴特：沿着这条街走，然后右转，左转，然后一直走，接着我就会看见一个路牌？

南希：是的。

戴特：你确信我不会遇到单行道吗？

南希：哦……我认为不会的……我在这没看到车啊。你的车呢？

戴特：我把它停放在那边了。你瞧。

南希：哦，不。在警察看到你在那儿停车之前，你最好把它开走。

戴特：为什么？我没看见任何“禁止停车”的标记啊。

南希：但是你放在了公交车专区。

戴特：警察来了。我得跑了……谢谢，



小姐……哦，顺便问一下，去故宫要多久？

南希：大概半个小时。

戴特：再次感谢。你真热心。

南希：快点吧，否则你会被开罚单的。

注释：

crossroad /'krɔ:srəud/

n. 十字路口

one-way street 单行道

one way 单程

zone /zəun/

n. 区域

ticket /'tɪkɪt/

n. 罚单、票

7. 预订机票 Booking a ticket

Booking a ticket



Customer: I need to get a flight to Chicago on the 6th in the morning. Can you give me a hand?



Clerk: Certainly, sir. There is a flight at 8:20 am and one at 11:00. Which would you prefer?

Customer: The earlier one would be better. Is it a non-stop flight?

Clerk: Yes, it is.

Customer: OK. I'll take that flight.

Clerk: You want to go first class or economy class?

Customer: I prefer first class, and could you give me a window seat, please? What's the fare?

Clerk: No problem. One-way is \$200.

Customer: Is there any discount for this flight?

Clerk: I'm afraid not, sir.

Customer: Fine, I'll take it.

Clerk: A seat on Flight AZ798 to Chicago at 8:20 on the morning of the 6th. Is it right, sir?

Customer: Right.

订机票

顾客： 我需要订一个6日上午去芝加哥的航班，您能帮忙吗？

职员： 当然可以，先生。早上8：20有一个航班，还有一班是11：00。您想要哪班？

顾客： 早一点的那班。是直航对吗？

职员： 是的。

顾客： 好的，那我就乘那班飞机。

职员： 您要头等舱还是经济舱？

顾客： 头等舱的，能给我一个靠窗的座位吗？票价多少？

职员： 没问题。单程票价是200美元。

顾客： 这趟航班有折扣吗？

职员： 不好意思，没有折扣。

顾客： 好的，就这班吧。

职员： 一张AZ798次航班6号早晨8：20飞往芝加哥的机票，对吗，先生？

顾客： 没错。

注释：

flight /flaɪt/

*n.*班机

economy /ɪ'kɒnəmi/

*n.*经济

fare /feə/

*n.*费用

discount /'dɪskaunt/

*n.*折扣**8. 办理登机 Checking in****Check-in**

Lillian: Excuse me. Is this the counter to check in?

Clerry: Yes. May I see your ticket?

Lillian: Here you are.

Clerry: Do you have anything to check?

Lillian: No. I just have this suitcase along with me.

Clerry: I'm afraid that your suitcase is overweight.



Lillian: What is the limit weight?

Clerry: Fifty pounds.

Lillian: I'm sorry to hear that. Can I take a handbag along with me?

Clerry: Of course.

Lillian: When should I board the flight?

Clerry: You must board twenty minutes before the departure.

Lillian: It departs at eight, right?

Clerry: Yes, you're right.

办理登机手续

莉莲：麻烦问一下，这是办理登机手续的地方吗？

彻丽：是的。我可以看一下你的机票吗？

莉莲：给你。

彻丽：你有什么需要托运的吗？

莉莲：没有，我就带了这个行李箱。

彻丽：恐怕你的行李箱超重了。

莉莲：限重多少？

彻丽：50镑。

莉莲：很抱歉，我可以随身带一个手提

包吗？

彻丽：当然可以。

莉莲：我应该什么时候登机？

彻丽：起飞前**20**分钟。

莉莲：八点起飞，对吗？

彻丽：是的。

注释：

counter /'kauntə/

n. 柜台; 柜台式长桌

suitcase /'su:tkeɪs/

n. 小型旅行箱; 手提箱

overweight /'əʊvəweɪt/

a. 超重的; 过重的

handbag /'hændbæg/

n. (女用) 手提包; 旅行袋, 旅行包

board /bɔ:d/

vt. 上(船、车、飞机等)

departure /dɪ'pɑ:tʃə/

n. 离开; 出发, 起程



9. 领取行李 Luggage claiming

Retrieving the luggage



Clerk: Hi there, I hope you had a good flight.

Man: I did, thank you. Which conveyor belt will my luggage be on?

Clerk: It's right over there, sir.

Man: OK, thank you.

Woman: Be prepared for a wait. I've been standing here for 5 minutes.

Man: Really? That sucks. I have someone waiting for me.

Woman: You'd better call them and tell them you'll be late.

Man: Alright. Thanks for the warning.

Woman: No problem. Oh, there's my bag. Good luck.

Man: Thanks.



取行李

职员：你好，希望您旅途愉快。

乘客：的确很好，谢谢你。我的行李在
哪条传送带上？

职员：就在那边，先生。

乘客：好的，谢谢。

女乘客：还是等一会儿吧，我都在这里站
了5分钟了。

乘客：是吗？那太糟糕了。有人在等
我了。

女乘客：最好给他们打个电话告诉他们你
会晚一会儿。

乘客：好的，谢谢你的提醒。

女乘客：没关系。哦，那是我的行李。祝
你好运。

乘客：谢谢。

注释：

retrieve /rɪ'tri:v/

vt. 重新得到，收回

conveyor /kən'veɪə/

n. 输送机



luggage

/'lʌgɪdʒ/

*n.*行李

suck

/sʌk/

*v.*吸收(水分); 吸取(知识); 很糟

10. 海关申报 Declarations at customs

What's this?



Customs officer: Could you please put your suitcase on the counter and open it?
What's this?

Mr. Green: That's a package of green tea.

Customs officer: OK. And what's this?

Mr. Green: Those? Those are apples.

Customs officer: I'm sorry, sir. You can't bring fresh fruit into the United States. I have to confiscate these.

Mr. Green: Oh, that's too bad.



Customs officer: We have to handle fresh fruit with kid gloves. But, don't worry. There's plenty of good fresh fruit here in Los Angeles.

Mr. Green: Thanks.

Customs officer: OK. Here is your declaration form. Give it to the attendant at the exit. And hope you have a nice trip.

Mr. Green: Thanks. Bye.

Customs officer: Bye-bye. OK. Next.

这是什么？

海关工作人员：请把手提箱放在柜台上，打开好吗？这是什么？

格林先生：那是一包绿茶。

海关工作人员：好，这是什么？

格林先生：那些？那些是苹果。

海关工作人员：抱歉，先生，你不能带新鲜水果进入美国，我得没



收这些东西。

格林先生：哦，太可惜了。

海关工作人员：我们必须谨慎处理新鲜水果。别担心，洛杉矶有很多新鲜的水果。

格林先生：谢谢。

海关工作人员：这是你的申报单，交给出口的服务员。祝你旅行愉快。

格林先生：谢谢，再见。

海关工作人员：再见。好，下一位。

注释：

confiscate

/'kɒnfɪs,keɪt/

v. 没收

declaration

/.,deklə'reɪʃən/

n. 申报

attendant

/ə'tendənt/

n. 服务员

11. 乘出租车 Taking a taxi



Taking a taxi

Traveler: Taxi!

Driver: Hello, sir. Where do you want to go?

Traveler: I've got to be at the airport by 7 o'clock. Can you make it?

Driver: I'll try my best. Step in, please.

Traveler: OK. How long will it take to get there?

Driver: Maybe fifty minutes. But it's the rush hour now and the traffic is bad.

Traveler: How can we avoid the traffic jam?

Driver: What about making a detour to avoid the city center?

Traveler: That sounds good!

Driver: Sir, buckle up, please.

Traveler: Oh, I nearly forget it.

Driver: Don't worry. Here we go.

乘坐出租车

旅客：出租车！

司机：先生，你好。你要去哪儿？

旅客：我得在7点之前赶到机场，你能赶到吗？

司机：我尽力。请上车！

旅客：好的。到那里要多长时间？

司机：可能要50分钟。不过现在是高峰期，交通拥挤。

旅客：我们怎样才能避免堵车呢？

司机：我们绕道而行，避开市中心，怎么样？

旅客：听起来不错！

司机：先生，请系好安全带。

旅客：哦，我差点儿忘记了。

司机：别担心，这就出发。

注释：

rush hour

交通拥堵时段

avoid

/ə'vɔɪd/

v.避免

detour

/'di:tʊə/

n. 绕道

buckle

/'bʌkl/

v. 扣住

12. 自驾车 Driving a car

Driving a car



Tim: Hey guys, thanks for picking me up. I thought I'd be stranded out here all night.

Peter: No problem. Sucks you missed your bus though.

Tim: Yeah, that's \$10. I won't be seeing again.

Peter: Alright, hop in the back seat. Jack has shotgun.

Tim: Alright. Hey, would you mind putting on some music?

Peter: OK, as long as it's not rap. Jack, put some tunes on.

Tim: Jack, could you turn that up? I love this song.

Peter: OK, you buckle up. I don't need a ticket.

自驾车

提姆：嘿，哥们儿，谢谢你们来接我，我还以为我要在这里流浪一个晚上呢。

彼特：不客气，不过你错过公交车实在是太糟糕了。

提姆：是啊，那是**10**美元呢。我再也见不到了。

彼特：好了，上车吧，坐后排的座，杰克坐在前面了。

提姆：好的。嘿，放点音乐好吗？

彼特：好的，只要不是说唱音乐就行。杰克，放点音乐吧。

提姆：杰克，你能把那个开大点儿吗？我喜欢那首歌！

彼特：好了，你只要系好安全带就行，我可不想来张罚款单。

注释：

stranded /'strændɪd/

a. 搁浅的；无依无靠的

suck /sʌk/

v. 使卷入，吸引，吞没，很糟

hop /hɒp/

v. （轻快地）上（下）车（或船等）

shotgun /'ʃɒtgʌn/

n. 猎枪

rap /ræp/

n. 叩击（声）；敲击（声）；拍击（声）

buckle /'bʌkl/

n. 带扣；扣子；搭钩

13. 绿色出行 Green trip

Riding a bicycle or driving a car



Bailey: How do you usually get to school?

Cailyn: I usually ride my bike. Which form of transport do you prefer to use?

Bailey: I feel that I can enjoy the scenery when I ride a bicycle, but when I

feel lazy, I drive my car.

Cailyn: I think we should discourage people from using their private cars. They produce too much pollution!

Bailey: I agree, but I would find it difficult to stop using my car. It's just so convenient.

Cailyn: Cars might be convenient, but they are so bad for the environment.

Bailey: Do you have a car?

Cailyn: No, I used to have one though. Once I started riding my bicycle to get around, I found that I didn't really need it.

Bailey: Maybe if I sold my car now, I wouldn't be so tempted to use it.

Cailyn: You could try. It would save you a lot of money.

Bailey: That's true. Every month, I spend hundreds of dollars on gas, insurance and repairs.

Cailyn: If you get to class by bicycle every day instead of car, you will get lots of exercise, too!

骑自行车还是开车

贝莉：你一般怎么去学校？

凯琳：我一般都骑自行车去。你喜欢哪种交通工具？

贝莉：我觉得骑自行车可以欣赏风景，但是犯懒的时候我就开车。

凯琳：我觉得我们应该劝人们尽量少开私家车。汽车制造的污染太严重了！

贝莉：我同意，不过我觉得不开车很难做到。开车实在太方便了。

凯琳：开车可能是很方便，但是对环境的影响太恶劣了。

贝莉：你有车吗？

凯琳：没有。以前有过。后来开始骑自行车才发现，其实我并不是特别需要汽车。

贝莉：没准我现在要是把我的汽车卖了，也就不会非用它不可了。

凯琳：你可以试试看。那样可以帮你省下一大笔钱。

贝莉：没错。我每个月都要花上百美元付那些油费、保险费和修理费。

凯琳：如果你骑自行车去学校，而不是开车，你还能得到很多锻炼呢！

注释：

form /fɔ:m/

n. 形式

discourage /dɪs'kʌrɪdʒ/

v. 使气馁

convenient /kən'veɪnjənt/

a. 方便的

tempt /tempt/

v. 引诱

第三章 屋里屋外忙不停

1. 享受烹饪 Enjoying cooking

cooking



A: Do you like cooking?

B: I love it. I really enjoy cooking a meal from various ingredients and watching my friends enjoy it. It gives me a real sense of satisfaction. Do you enjoy cooking?

A: I don't like it. It takes up too much time and I really hate having to clean up after the meal. I can't stand doing the washing up, drying up and putting all the dishes and cutlery away.

B: You can ask the guests to help. My guests usually insist on doing the washing up. I just need to remind them where everything goes.

A: So, what kind of dishes do you usually make? I know you like Italian food.



B: Italian, Indian, and Chinese. I've only recently started cooking Chinese meals and I need some more practice.

A: Do you find it hard to get ingredients for Chinese food?

B: Not at all. You can find most of them at supermarket. The ingredients are usually the same as in Western food. The way that the food is prepared is the big difference, not the ingredients.

A: How long does it take you to cook a meal for five or six people?

B: Obviously, it depends on what I'm cooking, but I'd say it generally takes about one and a half hours.

做饭

A: 你喜欢做饭吗?

B: 我喜欢。我真的很享受用各种的材料烹制出一顿饭菜并且看着朋友们享用。这让我真的很有满足感。你喜欢做饭吗?



A: 我不喜欢。那样要花太多的时间，而且我真的很讨厌吃完饭后打扫卫生。我受不了洗餐具、擦餐具，还要把所有的餐具放好。

B: 你可以让客人帮忙呀。我的客人就经常坚持要帮我洗餐具。我只要告诉他们放在哪儿就行了。

A: 那么，你通常都做什么菜呢？我知道你喜欢意大利餐。

B: 意大利餐、印度餐，还有中餐。我最近做中餐，还需要更多的练习。

A: 你觉得买中餐的材料麻烦吗？

B: 一点都不麻烦。在超市里几乎都能买到。那些材料经常和西餐是一样的。只是烹制方法上的不同，而不是材料。

A: 为五、六个人做饭要花多长时间？

B: 很显然，那要看我做什么了，但是通常要花一个半小时。

注释：

ingredient /ɪn'grɪ:diənt/

n. 形式



various /'veəriəs/

adj. 各种各样的；多方面的；许多的；各个的，个别的

obviously /'bvəslɪ/

adv. 明显地

meal /mi:l/

n. 餐，饭；进餐（时间） *vi.* 进餐

2. 超市购物 Shopping at the supermarket

Going to the supermarket



Carrie: Let's get a shopping cart.

Adam: Good idea.

Carrie: What are you going to buy?

Adam: Let's check out the fruit section first.

Carrie: OK. I'd like some peaches. But they don't look quite **ripe** yet.

Adam: Look, I'll take some nice fresh cherries! They are ripe and soft.

Carrie: I'll take some, too.

Adam: Let's go to the snacks section. I



want some chocolate and sweets.

Carrie: OK. I'll go and buy some cakes.

Adam: Do you want to buy something else?

Carrie: I'd like to buy an electric iron. Where can I find them?

Adam: You can find it in the household appliances section.

Carrie: Which floor is the household appliances section on? I'm confused with so many items in the supermarket.

逛超市

卡丽：我们去拿一辆手推车吧。

亚当：好主意。

卡丽：你要买什么？

亚当：我们先去看看水果吧。

卡丽：好的，我想买些桃子。但这些看起来还不太熟。

亚当：你看，多棒多新鲜的樱桃！又熟又软。我决定买一些。

卡丽：我也买一些吧。

亚当：去看看零食吧。我想买些巧克力和糖果。

卡丽：好的，我去买蛋糕。

亚当：你还要买什么吗？

卡丽：我想买一个电熨斗。在哪里能找到呢？

亚当：也许你可以在家电区找到它。

卡丽：家电区在几楼？我被超市里这么多东西搞糊涂了。

注释：

ripe /raɪp/

*a.*成熟的

snack /snæk/

*n.*小吃

household appliance 家用电器

3. 洗衣服务 Laundry service

Dry cleaning



Receptionist: Hello, reception.

Tonny: Hi, I need to get my suit cleaned urgently. Do you

have a dry cleaning service?

Receptionist: Yes, we do.

Tonny: I need my suit cleaned for tomorrow. Will that be a problem?

Receptionist: We have no problem in complying with your request. You can use our express service and we can deliver it to you by 8 a.m.

Tonny: That's great. I'll have it before breakfast. I have an important meeting in the morning.

Receptionist: Do you have anything else that need dry cleaning? If you clean four items, you can get a discount.

Tonny: No, I just need my suit cleaned.

Receptionist: OK, I'll send someone to



pick it up.

Tonny: Thanks. Do I need to pay for that now?

Receptionist: No, we can charge it to your bill. Which room are you in?

Tonny: I'm in room 2508. My name is Tonny Smith.

Receptionist: OK. Mr. Smith. Someone will be with you shortly.

干洗

前台：您好，这里是前台。

托尼：你好，我急需把我的套装洗干净。你们有干洗服务吗？

前台：我们有干洗服务。

托尼：我明天需要穿干净的套装。这会有问题吗？

前台：我们可以答应这个要求。您可以用我们的快洗服务，我们可以在上午8点之前给您送过来。

托尼：太好了。在早餐前我要穿上它。



上午我有一个重要的会议。

前台：您还有其他需要干洗的吗？如果您洗四件的话可以打折。

托尼：没有，我只需把套装洗干净。

前台：好的，我会派人去取。

托尼：谢谢。我现在需要付费吗？

前台：不需要。我们会记到您的账单上。您住哪个房间？

托尼：我住在**2508**房间。我叫托尼·史密斯。

前台：好的，史密斯先生。马上会有人到您那儿去。

注释：

urgently /'ɜ:dʒəntli/

adv. 紧急地

deliver /dɪ'lɪvə/

v. 递送

discount /'dɪskaunt/

n. 折扣

shortly /'ʃɔ:tlɪ/

adv. 立刻

4. 做家务 Doing housework

Doing housework



Son: Dad, can I go outside to play?

Dad: Well, did you get your Saturday's work done?

Son: Ah, Dad. Do I have to?

Dad: Well, you know the rules. No playing until the work is done.

Son: So, what is my work?

Dad: Well, first you have to clean the bathroom including the toilet. And don't forget to scrub the bathtub.

Son: No, I want to do the family room.

Dad: Well, okay, but you have to vacuum the family room and the hall, and be sure to dust everything. Oh, and don't forget to wipe the walls and clean the baseboards. [Okay.] And after that. [Oh, no.] Next, sweep and mop the kitchen floor and be sure to polish the table in the living room.

Son: Okay.Okay.

Dad: And make your bed and pick up all your toys and put them away. And.

Son: More?

Dad: Yeah. And then, how about going out for lunch and getting a big milk shake, but you probably don't want to do that.

Son: No, No. I want to.

Dad: Okay. While you're doing your work, I'll be out in the yard raking leaves and pulling weeds.

做家务

儿子: 爸爸, 我可以出去玩吗?

爸爸: 哦, 你周六的工作完成了吗?

儿子: 啊, 爸爸。我必须做吗?

爸爸: 那么, 规矩你是知道的。完成不了任务是不能玩的。

儿子: 那么, 我要做什么呢?

爸爸: 首先把浴室打扫一下, 包括马桶。不要忘了擦洗浴缸。

儿子: 不, 我想打扫休息室。

爸爸: 那么, 好吧, 但是你必须用吸尘器打扫一下休息室和客厅。必须确保所有东西都除一下尘。哦, 不要忘了擦墙及护墙板。(好的) 完了之后(哦, 不) 接着打扫和拖一下厨房的地板并确保客厅的餐桌光亮。

儿子: 好吧。

爸爸: 整理一下你的床铺, 收拾一下你的玩具, 把它们归纳好。然后……

儿子: 还有?

爸爸: 是的。然后出去吃午饭, 吃个大的奶昔怎么样, 但是可能你不太愿意。

儿子: 不, 不。我想去。

爸爸: 好的。你干你的活, 我到院子里耙一下落叶, 拔拔野草。

注释:

scrub

/skrʌb/

vt. 用力擦洗; 揉

vacuum

/'vækjuəm/

vt. 用真空吸尘器清扫

mop /mɒp/

vt. 用拖把拖洗

polish /'pɒlɪʃ/

vt. 磨光, 擦亮

rake /reɪk/

vt. (用耙) 耙平; 耙松

5. 在外用餐 Eating out

Taste some beef



(Marvin invites Lucy to a restaurant. He is recommending dishes to her.)

Marvin: This is a very nice restaurant.

Lucy: Really? Could you give me some advice on their dishes?

Marvin: I'd like to advise you to have some beef. They have a long history to serve it here.

Lucy: It means beef is a traditional dish here?

Marvin: Yes, exactly. They cook beef in a special way. I'm sure you'll



certainly be quite satisfied with it.

Lucy: Alright. I would like to have some beef.

Marvin: Besides, they serve the beef with a few seasonings together.

Lucy: Um, that'll make it very delicious.

Marvin: Of course.

Lucy: I am starving. I can't wait to pig out at dinner.

Marvin: Me too. Let's order dishes as quickly as we can.

Lucy: Alright.

尝尝牛肉

(马文邀请露西到一家餐厅用餐。他正在向她介绍菜品。)

马文：这是一家非常不错的餐馆！

露西：真的吗？可以给我推荐一下他们的菜品吗？

马文：我想向你推荐牛肉。这家饭店供应牛肉已有很长的历史了。

露西：你的意思是牛肉在这里是很传统的一道菜？

马文：是的，非常正确。他们的牛肉烹制方法与众不同，我保证你吃过之后一定很满意。

露西：好吧，我就来牛肉吧。

马文：而且，同烹好的牛肉一同上桌的还有好几种调味品呢。

露西：嗯，这会使牛肉很可口呀。

马文：当然。

露西：我饿了，真恨不得马上就有晚饭可以吃。

马文：我也是。我们快点点菜吧。

露西：好啊。

注释：

serve

/sə:v/

v.招待、供应

seasoning

/'sɪzənɪŋ/

n.调味品

starving

/sta:vɪŋ/

a.饥饿的



6. 烫发 Perming



A perm

Hairdresser: I'm sorry to have kept you waiting so long. What do you want?

Jane: I'd like a perm.

Hairdresser: Do you want a tight, medium or naturally curly perm?

Jane: I'd like to have it medium.

Hairdresser: How about your hairstyle?

Jane: What hairstyle would you recommend?

Hairdresser: Well, with a perm we can do various kinds of patterns, such as a bob, chaplet hairstyle or a bun. Which do you prefer?

Jane: I want a chaplet one. I'd like to have it in big waves.
(Three hours later)



Hairdresser: It looks wonderful.

Jane: Turn the chair so that I can see myself in the mirror.

Hairdresser: How do you like it?

Jane: Beautifully done. Thank you a lot.

烫发

美发师：很抱歉，让您久等了。您想怎么做头发？

简：我想烫卷。

美发师：您想烫小卷、中卷，还是自然卷？

简：我想烫成中卷。

美发师：发型呢？

简：根据我的脸型你会建议什么发型呢？

美发师：烫发可以做成不同造型，比如说短发式，盘花冠式，圆发髻式。您喜欢哪种呢？

简：我喜欢盘花冠式。就烫成大波浪卷吧。



(三个小时后)

美发师：看上去很漂亮。

简：转一下椅子，这样我就可以在镜子里看到我自己了。

美发师：您感觉怎么样？

简：很漂亮，谢谢。

注释：

perm /pə:m/

n. & v. 烫发

wave /weɪv/

n. 卷发，波浪

chaplet hairstyle 盘花冠式发型

7. 买衣服 Buying clothes

Buying clothes for the others



Salesgirl: Hello! Can I help you?

Falcon: Well, I am looking for some winter clothes for my fiancée.

Salesgirl: Oh. It's high time for you purchased in our clothes shop. We are now

having a pre-season sale on all our winter apparel.

Falcon: Really? What's that?

Salesgirl: Every thing for winter is 20% off.

Falcon: I think my fiancée may favor the sweater in the shop window. Would you like to help me look for any skirts that go with this sweater?

Salesgirl: Sure, we have both skirts and trousers that would look well with the sweater. Look at this section.

Falcon: I especially like this flowery skirts. My fiancée will look very elegant in this.

Salesgirl: You have a good taste. It's very much in style this year.

Falcon: I don't think the green one fits

her complexion. Do you have any skirts in light color or tan?

Salesgirl: Look on the rack to the right.

Falcon: Oh, yes. I'll take this one. Can I pay by traveler's check?

Salesgirl: It's OK.

为别人买衣服

女售货员：你好！需要帮忙吗？

福尔肯：哦，我想为我的未婚妻买点冬季的衣服。

女售货员：噢，您来得正是时候。我们的冬衣正在进行季前清售。

福尔肯：是吗？能说说看吗？

女售货员：每件冬季单品都降价**20%**。

福尔肯：我觉得我未婚妻应该会喜欢橱窗里的毛衣。可以帮我挑选一下和这件毛衣搭配的裙子吗？

女售货员：可以。裙子、裤子都有可以和这件毛衣搭配的。看看这个。

福尔肯：我特别喜欢这件华丽一点的裙子。我未婚妻穿上这个应该会很优雅。

女售货员：您真有品位。这是今年最流行的。

福尔肯：我觉得绿色不适合她的皮肤。你们有浅一点的颜色或者棕褐色的吗？

女售货员：看看你右边的架子。

福尔肯：哦，好的。我买这个了。我可以用旅行支票付款吗？

女售货员：可以。

注释：

fiancee /'fi:ɑ:nseɪ/

*n.*未婚妻

preseason /pri: 'si:zən/

*adj.*旺季之前

apparel /ə'pærəl/

*n.*服饰，衣服

sweater /'swetə/



n. 毛绒毛衣, 运动衫

section /'sekʃən/

n. 截面, 部门, 地区, 章节

in style 流行, 时髦

complexion /kəm'plekʃən/

n. 肤色, 面色, 情况, 局面

8. 搬家 Moving house

Moving house



(Mr. Johnson wanted to move his house to Seattle. He was talking with an agent of the Roddy House-moving Company.)

Client: Good morning! What can I do for you?

Johnson: I want to move my house to Seattle.

Client: When will you move?

Johnson: Next Saturday.

Client: OK. How many things do you have?

Johnson: Refrigerator, washing machine, two beds, one wardrobe, two bookcases, one table and some small things.

Client: Then you need a big truck?

Johnson: All right. And what is the charge?

Client: \$300.

Johnson: Thank you. This is my address. Please arrive on time because I have many irons in the fire.

Client: Sure. We will arrive at 7:30 a.m.

搬家

(约翰逊先生想把家搬到西雅图。他正在与罗帝搬家公司的人员交谈。)

职员：早上好，你需要帮助吗？

约翰逊：我想把家搬到西雅图。

职员：你想什么时候搬？

约翰逊：下周六。

职员：可以，你家有多少东西？

约翰逊：冰箱、洗衣机、两张床、一个衣柜、两个书架、一张桌子和一些小物件。

职员：那么你需要一辆大卡车？

约翰逊：好吧，费用是多少？

职员：300美元。

约翰逊：谢谢。这是我的地址。请准时到达，因为我还有很多事要做。

职员：当然。我们7点半到。

注释：

refrigerator /rɪ'frɪdʒəreɪtə/

n. 冰箱

wardrobe /'wɔ:drəʊb/

n. 衣柜

address /ə'dres/

n. 住址,地址; 演说,致辞

经典释疑

Please arrive on time because I have many irons in the fire. 请准时到达，因为

我还有很多事要做。have many irons in the fire的字面意思是指“铁匠同时有几件活儿在火里等着打”，在口语中意指“同时有几件要紧的事情要做”或“同时有很多问题得解决”。例如：Our teacher is always as busy as a bee, often having many irons in the fire.我们老师总是忙忙碌碌，同时有很多重要的事得做。

9.看医生 Seeing a doctor

Seeing a doctor



Susan: Hello, Mr. Green. What can I do for you today?

Green: Well, I've got this pain in my ear, a sore throat and keep losing my voice.

Susan: I think you have a cold.

Green: Er, yes, yes, I do. Well, last night I got this sore throat and started



getting hot.

Susan: Do you have a fever? Have you taken the temperature?

Green: Yes. It's thirty-nine degrees Celsius.

Susan: Right. Let me have a look. Open wide, Mmm. Let's have a look at this ear. Turn a little, will you? Mmm, Mmm, Uhhuh. That's good. Right you are, Mr. Green.

Green: Thank you, doctor.

Susan: You'd better stay in bed for three days. By the way, take this to the chemist on your way home. Take it three times a day after meals. Nothing to worry about. It will clear up quickly. All right then?

Green: You always know where the shoe pinches. Thank you.

看病就医

苏珊：你好，格林先生。你今天怎么啦？

格林：哎，我耳朵痛、喉咙痛，还老是说不出话来。

苏珊：你是感冒了吧。

格林：是，我想是的。嗯，我的喉咙从昨天晚上开始就不舒服，而且身上发烫。

苏珊：你发烧吗？你量过体温没有？

格林：量了，体温**39**度。

苏珊：好的。让我检查一下。张大嘴，好的。我看一下你这只耳朵。稍微转过来点儿，好，好了，格林先生。

格林：谢谢你，大夫。

苏珊：你最好卧床休息**3**天。回家路上拿这个药方去药店买药。一天服**3**次，饭后服。不用着急，你很快就会康复的。就这样吧，好吗？

格林：你总是知道问题之所在。谢谢。

注释：

pain /peɪn/

n. 疼痛

throat /θrəʊt/

n. 喉咙

temperature /'tempərɪtʃə/

n. 温度

经典释疑

You always know where the shoe pinches.

你总是知道问题之所在。know where the shoe pinches的字面意思是“知道鞋哪儿夹脚”，常用来比喻“知道问题的症结所在”。例如：**Let's make a deal. You give me money and I'll tell you where the shoe pinches.**咱们做笔交易。你出钱，我告诉你问题出在哪里。

10. 体育锻炼 Physical exercise

Playing



Jerry: Hi, Betty. Are you free this afternoon?

Betty: Yes, I am. Why do you ask?

Jerry: I bought a new set of tennis rackets.
I want to play with you. How about you?

Betty: It's OK. Where are we going to play?

Jerry: We will go to the school's indoor tennis court.

Betty: Are we permitted to use it?

Jerry: It shouldn't be a problem.

Betty: Great. When will we leave?

Jerry: Shall we go right now?

Betty: OK.

Jerry: Do you often play tennis?

Betty: No. Not often at all.

Jerry: Are you good at it?

Betty: I'm very poor at tennis, but I think



Jerry: you must be good at it.

Just so so. Actually, I am not a

Betty: very good player.

打球

杰里：嗨！贝蒂，你今天下午有空吗？

贝蒂：有空。你为什么这样问我？

杰里：我今天买了一副新网球拍。想和你一起打球，怎么样？

贝蒂：当然可以。我们去哪儿打呢？

杰里：我们去学校的室内网球场吧。

贝蒂：让我们进吗？

杰里：我认为这不成问题。

贝蒂：那太好了。我们什么时候出发？

杰里：我们现在就去怎么样？

贝蒂：行。

杰里：你经常打网球吗？

贝蒂：不经常打。

杰里：那你打得好吗？

贝蒂：我非常不擅长打网球，但是我觉得你一定很会打。

杰里：还凑合。事实上打得不是特别好。

注释：

racket /'rækɪt/

n.球拍

court /kɔ:t/

n.球场

permit /pə'mɪt/

v.允许

11. 邮寄包裹 Sending a parcel

Sending a parcel



Jackie: Can I help you?

Maria: I want to send this package to Liverpool.

Jackie: What does it contain?

Maria: A vase.

Jackie: By airmail or ordinary mail?

Maria: By airmail, though it's more expensive.

Jackie: Do you wish to insure it?





Maria: Since it can be broken easily, I would like to insure it. I'll have it insured for 100 dollars.

Jackie: OK. And you should fill out the form for the package and clearly state its content and value.

Maria: OK. How much should I pay?

Jackie: Let me weigh it first. Oh, the postage is 70 dollars.

Maria: Here is the money. Thank you.

寄包裹

杰基：有什么需要我帮您的吗？

玛丽亚：我想把这个包裹寄到利物浦。

杰基：里面装的是什么？

玛丽亚：一个花瓶。

杰基：航空还是平邮？

玛丽亚：航空吧，虽然比平邮要贵一些。

杰基：您希望保险吗？

玛丽亚：因为它容易打破，我愿意投保。
请给它保100美元。

杰基：好的。请您填写这份表格并清楚地注明包裹内装有何物及其价值。

玛丽亚：好的，我要付多少钱？

杰基：我首先得称一下包裹重量。哦，邮资是70美元。

玛丽亚：给你钱，谢谢。

注释：

package /'pækɪdʒ/

n. 包裹

insure /ɪn'sʊə/

v. 投保

ordinary /'ɔ:diənəri/

a. 普通的

12. 在美容院 In the beauty salon

Buying beauty products



Clerk: Good morning, madam. Can I help you?

Customer: I want to buy some cleansing milk.



What would you recommend?

Clerk: Your complexion is on the oily side. I suggest you use cleansing gel.

Customer: Anything that can keep my skin clean will do.

Clerk: How about this one? It cleans thoroughly without stripping your natural protective oil. The gentle formula keeps skin soft and healthy.

Customer: Hm...the smell is too strong, and I can't stand it. I'm very sensitive to fragrance.

Clerk: We've also got a fragrance-free one, especially for sensitive skin. I'm sure you'll like it.

Customer: I'll try that. Do you have facial cream to go with that?

Clerk: Yes, sure. This line of products

is fragrance-free. We have facial mask, moisturizing lotion, eye cream and etc.

Customer: I'll buy the moisturizing lotion and cleansing gel first. If they suit me, I'll come back for the others later.

Clerk: Thank you very much, madam. Here are some samples of our products. Do try them out.

买美容产品

店员：上午好，女士。我能效劳吗？

顾客：我想买洗面奶，你能给我推荐一款吗？

店员：您的皮肤比较油，我建议您用洁面啫喱。

顾客：任何能保持我面部清洁的都行。

店员：这个怎么样？它能彻底清洁您的皮肤，又不会洗去保护表皮天然油分，而且配方温和，能保持



皮肤柔软、健康。

顾客： 嗯……这个味道太浓了，我受不了。我对香味非常敏感。

店员： 我们有一款无香味的，是专为敏感肌肤设计的，相信您一定喜欢。

顾客： 那我试试看，有与之配套的面霜吗？

店员： 当然有。这个系列的产品都是无香味的，包括面膜、保湿乳液、眼霜等产品。

顾客： 我先买保湿乳液和洁面啫喱。要是合适，再回来买其他产品。

店员： 谢谢您，女士。这儿有一些我们其他产品的样品。试试看。

注释：

complexion /kəm'plekʃən/

n. 肤色

thoroughly /'θʌrəli/

adv. 彻底地

strip /stri:p/

v. 剥去

formula /'fɔ:mjʊlə/

n. 配方

sensitive /'sensitiv/

a. 敏感的

13. 在加油站 At the gas station

At the gas station



Henry: We need to stop and get some gas. I'm almost on empty.

Maria: You worry too much. We have plenty of gas to get home.

Henry: I don't think so. See, the warning light is on, too.

Maria: Usually after the warning light, there is about five gallons of gas left.

Henry: Really? There's that much?

Maria: Sure. If it makes you feel better, we can stop at the Exxon there on the corner.



Henry: Good idea.

Maria: I am absolutely sure that we have enough gas to drive home.

Henry: On the contrary, I feel so worried that my car will run out of gas on the middle of the highway.

Maria: Don't worry. We are arriving at the gas station. We'll fill it up.

在加油站

亨利：我们需要停下来加点油。油表已经快指到“没油”了。

玛丽亚：你太多虑了。我们还有足够的油可以回到家。

亨利：我不这么想。你看，警示灯也亮了。

玛丽亚：通常警示灯亮了之后，车子还剩5加仑油。

亨利：真的？有那么多吗？

玛丽亚：当然了。如果加油会让你觉得踏实点儿，我们就在街角那个埃克

森加油站停下来加油好了。

亨利：好主意。

玛丽亚：我完全相信我们有足够的油供我们开回家。

亨利：相反，我特别担心汽车会在高速公路上中途没油。

玛丽亚：别担心，我们已经到加油站了。我们会把油加满的。

注释：

gallon /'gælən/

n. 加仑（容量单位）

gas station 加油站

warning light 报警信号灯，警示灯

14. 租房子 Renting a house

Renting a house



Jack: May I come in?

Fred: Yes. Come in, please. Now let me show you the house.

Jack: This seems like a pretty nice



house, I should say.

Fred: You bet. This is the nicest house in the district. You know what, I just had all the walls repainted last month.

Jack: What about the kitchen?

Fred: It's a well furnished kitchen. The stove and the ice-box are in good order, and the plumbing is OK, too.

Jack: I see. If the rent is reasonable, I'd like to live here for about three years.

Fred: The rent is \$465 per month and the security deposit is two months rent.

Jack: Sounds a good bargain.

Fred: You can put that in your pipe and smoke it.

Jack: Next Saturday at the latest.



租房子

杰克：可以进来吗？

弗雷德：请进。我来带你看一看房子吧。

杰克：应该说房子还是相当不错的。

弗雷德：你说对了。这是这个区最好的房子了。你知道吗，上个月我刚把所有的墙壁重新粉刷了一下。

杰克：厨房怎么样？

弗雷德：厨房设施很全。炉灶和冰箱均正常，管道也没问题。

杰克：好的。如果租金合理的话，我想在这里住上大约三年。

弗雷德：月租是**465**美元，押金为两个月的房租。

杰克：听起来挺划算的。

弗雷德：你好好考虑考虑吧。

杰克：好的，我下周六答复你。

注释：

district

/'dɪstrɪkt/

n. 地区

repaint /rɪ:'peɪnt/

vt. 重漆; 重画

reasonable /'ri:zənəbl/

a. 合理的

security /sɪ'kju:rɪti/

n. 保证; 保障; 安全; 防备

kitchen /'kɪtʃɪn/

n. 厨房

plumbing /'plʌmɪŋ/

n. 装设水管煤气管等

经典释疑

You can put that in your pipe and smoke it. 你好好考虑考虑吧。put something in one's pipe and smoke it 的字面意思是“把某物放到烟斗里吸一吸，琢磨琢磨味道”，现常用来喻指“好好考虑考虑某事”或“好好琢磨某事”。此语常用于祈使句。例如：Don't take it out on me. It is he who makes you lose so

much money. Put it in your pipe and smoke it. 别拿我撒气。是他让你亏本儿的，你好好清醒清醒吧。

15. 办理银行业务 Banking service

Withdrawing money



Peter: Excuse me, I want to withdraw some money from my account. Here is my certificate of deposit.

Clerk: I'm sorry. The code number doesn't coincide with the one you gave us when you opened your account.

Peter: I'm terribly sorry. I can't remember it exactly. Let me see. Is this number correct?

Clerk: It's correct now. Do you want to withdraw all money from your account?

Peter: Yes.



Clerk: Actually you needn't cancel your account. I suggest you leave a small amount in your account so that you can keep it for further use.

Peter: That's not necessary. I'm leaving here for a long time and returning to my home country.

Clerk: That's OK. How would you like to have your money?

Peter: Can I have it all in one-hundred bills?

Clerk: Of course. Just a minute. Here is your money and the interest you've earned. Please check it.

Peter: OK. Thank you.

取钱

彼得：劳驾，我想从我的账户里取些钱。这是我的存单。

职员：很抱歉，密码与您开户时的密码不一致。

彼得：太抱歉了，我记不清了，让我想一想。这个号码对吗？

职员：对了。您想把账户上的钱全部取出来吗？

彼得：是的。

职员：其实您不必销户的。我建议您在账户上留一点钱，您可以保留该账户，以便将来使用。

彼得：没有必要了。我就要离开这里回国了。

职员：好吧，您需要什么票面的？

彼得：都要一百元的，行吗？

职员：当然可以，请稍等。这是您的钱和利息，请点一下。

彼得：好的，谢谢。

注释：

withdraw /wɪð'drɔː/

v. 取回

coincide /ˌkəʊɪn'saɪd/

v. 符合

cancel

/'kænsəl/

v. 取消

16. 在快餐店 At the fast food service

In McDonald's



Waiter: Welcome! Can I help you?

Tom: I want a small order of French fries and a Big Mac.

Waiter: Anything else? What about a strawberry pie?

Tom: No, thanks.

Waiter: Is that for here or to go?

Tom: For here.

Waiter: Here you are, sir. That's twenty dollars.

(Mike is coming in.)

Waiter: What would you like, sir?

Mike: I'd like an orange juice and two hot dogs.

Waiter: Is that all?

Mike: Yes, that's it.

Waiter: Could you wait just a moment, please? Your hot dogs will be ready soon.

Mike: Sure!

在麦当劳

服务生：欢迎光临！请问您需要点什么？

汤姆：我要一小份炸薯条和一个巨无霸。

服务生：您还需要其他的吗？来一个草莓派怎么样？

汤姆：不要了，谢谢你。

服务生：您是在这里吃还是要带走？

汤姆：在这里吃。

服务生：给您。一共**20**美元。

（迈克进来了。）

服务生：先生，您想要点儿什么？

迈 克：我要一杯橙汁和两个热狗。

服务生：就这些吗？

迈 克：是的，就这些。

服务生：您能稍等片刻吗？您要的热狗很



快就好。

迈克：当然可以。

注释：

else /els/

adj. 别的，其他的

wait /weit/

v. 等待，等

ready /'redi/

adj. 准备好的

17. 吃自助餐 Having buffet

Buffet



Waiter: How is everything here?

Customer: Great. We're really enjoying the buffet.

Waiter: Are you finished with these plates?

Customer: Yes, except for this one. I'm still working on it.



Waiter: Would you mind if I took the rest of these plates away?

Customer: Not at all.

Waiter: Can I get you anything else right now?

Customer: Actually, last time when we got up and got some food, we noticed that the French fries were running low.

Waiter: Thanks for letting me know. I'll go and get some more. I can bring a few slices to your table if you prefer.

Customer: That won't be necessary. Thanks.

自助餐

服务生：这里的菜怎么样？

顾客：非常好。我们真的很喜欢这里的自助餐。

服务生：这些盘子都用完了吗？

顾客：是的，除了这个，其他的盘子都用完了。这个盘子里的，我还在吃。

服务生：您介意我把其他的盘子都撤走吗？

顾客：不介意。

服务生：您现在还要其他什么吗？

顾客：事实上，上次我们去取食物的时候，看到炸薯条快没了。

服务生：谢谢您告诉我，我去再加一些。如果您愿意的话，我给您再拿一些过来。

顾客：不用了，谢谢。

注释：

plate /pleɪt/

n. 盘子

rest /rest/

a. 剩下的

notice /'nəʊtɪs/

v. 注意

slice /slaɪs/

n. 薄片

extensive /iks'tensɪv/

a. 丰富的，广泛的

cafeteria /,kæfɪ'tiəriə/

n. 自助餐馆

variety /və'raɪəti/

n. 种类

18. 依依惜别 Saying goodbye

It's hard to say goodbye!



Mary: I come to say goodbye.

Bobbie: Why? What's the matter?

Mary: I miss my family very much. You know I haven't been home for several months.

Bobbie: It's really hard to say goodbye to you. We have a lot in common. What a blast we had!

Mary: I really enjoy the time with you. I feel so sorry.

Bobbie: I know. When are you off?



Mary: I'm flying home the day after tomorrow. Would you like to take care of my cat for me? It is a goody-goody.

Bobbie: Yes, certainly. I love cats, too. We may chew the fat through the phone.

Mary: You bet! I hope I can see you soon.

Bobbie: Well, goodbye.

Mary: Please don't forget to say goodbye to the rest of the family for me.

依依惜别

玛丽: 我是来告别的。

博比: 为什么? 怎么了?

玛丽: 你知道我已经好几个月没回家了, 很想家。

博比: 真不愿意跟你分别, 我们有很多相似的地方, 一起“疯”得多爽呀!

玛丽：和你一起，我也感到很愉快。真遗憾！

博比：哎！你什么时候走？

玛丽：后天，我坐飞机走。你能替我照看一下我的猫咪吗？它很乖的。

博比：当然，我也喜欢猫咪。我们可以在电话上闲聊。

玛丽：那是当然，希望不久就能见到你。

博比：好吧，再见。

玛丽：别忘了替我向你家人告别。

注释：

blast /bla:st/

n. 疾风

the day after tomorrow 后天

goody /'gudɪ/

n. 吸引人的东西

chew /tʃu: /

vt. 咀嚼

bet /bet/

vt. 敢，断定，确信



19. 友人相聚 Getting together

Talking about the party



Bob: Hello, Tom, long time no see. How are you?

Tom: I am fine, thanks, Bob. How is everything going?

Bob: Everything goes well. I have something to tell you.

Tom: What?

Bob: Our classmates of senior middle school will hold a gathering this weekend. Would you like to join in?

Tom: How time flies! It has been nearly ten years since we graduated.

Bob: Yeah, so do you want to take part in?

Tom: OK, I will go.

Bob: Let's fix it. Now, I'd better get off the phone. I have to go to the meeting.

Tom: OK, see you.

谈论聚会

鲍勃：你好，汤姆，好久不见。你好吗？

汤姆：我很好，谢谢你，鲍勃。你一切都好吗？

鲍勃：一切安好。我有件事要告诉你。

汤姆：什么事？

鲍勃：我们高中同学这周末要聚会，你来吗？

汤姆：时光飞逝，从毕业到现在将近十年了。

鲍勃：嗯，那你要来参加吗？

汤姆：好，我会去的。

鲍勃：就这么说定了。现在，我得挂电话了，得去开会。

汤姆：好，再见。

注释：

senior

/'si:njə/

a. 高年級的

hold

/həuld/

vt. 举行

graduate /'grædʒueɪt/

vt. 准予……毕业; 授予……学位

fix /fɪks/

vt. 确定; 决定

20. 邻里之间 Neighborhood

We're neighbors



Frank: Excuse me, can these gloves be yours?

Alice: Oh, yes. Thank you.

Frank: I saw them in the phone booth immediately after you left.

Alice: I was in a great hurry, and I wasn't aware that I had left them behind.

Frank: My name is Frank Sullivan. I live in this apartment building. Do you live here, too? You must be new here.

Alice: Yes. I moved in only yesterday. My name is Alice.

Frank: So we're neighbors. Call me

Frank: I live in 303, and you?

Alice: I live in No. 403.

Frank: How interesting! That's right over us.

Alice: I hope I've not been making too much noise. I've just arrived from California and have got to move the things about a bit.

Frank: No. By the way, why not drop in for a drink this evening? My wife Kathy would be most pleased to meet you. You can shoot the breeze with her. She is an easy-going person.

Alice: Thank you. I'd love to. See you in the evening then, Frank.

Frank: See you in the evening.

我们是邻居

弗兰克：打扰了，这副手套是你的吗？

艾丽丝：哦，是的，谢谢你。

弗兰克：你离开电话亭后，我发现了这副手套。

艾丽丝：我很匆忙，没有意识到把它们落下了。

弗兰克：我叫弗兰克·沙利文，住在这幢楼。你也住在这儿吗？你一定是刚来这儿吧。

艾丽丝：对，我昨天刚搬来。我叫艾莉丝。

弗兰克：这么说我们是邻居了。叫我弗兰克好了。我住在**303**号，你呢？

艾丽丝：我住在**403**号。

弗兰克：真巧！正好在我们楼上。

艾丽丝：但愿我没有弄出太大的声音。我刚从加利福尼亚来这儿，我得把屋里的东西搬动一下。

弗兰克：没事。顺便问一下，有没有兴趣今天晚上到我那儿喝点什么？我妻子凯西会非常高兴见到你的。你可以和她聊聊天。她是个很好接触的人。

艾丽丝：谢谢。好的。那么今晚见，弗兰克。

弗兰克：晚上见。

注释：

immediately /i'mi:diətli/

adv. 立刻、立即

hurry /'hʌri/

n. 匆忙

第四章 忙里偷闲享受生活

1. 享受天籁之音 Enjoying music

Listening to songs



(Emma and Jessica are listening to songs.)

Emma: Jessica, listen to the lyrics of this song.

Jessica: What's so special about this song?

Emma: It's from the musical that is so popular in New York right now. Do you like it?

Jessica: Not very much. It sounds too emotional to me.

Emma: That's why it is so popular. It was recorded by Barbara Martin. I've heard that when she sang this song on stage on the opening night, she created quite a sensation.

I'm afraid my association with
 Jessica: Broadway musicals is rather limited. Compared with that, I know more about jazz.

Well then, you need an
 Emma: introduction. The school drama club is putting on a musical production. How about going together?

I have a better idea. Let's go to
 Jessica: a jazz concert and I'll give you an education in jazz.

听歌

(艾玛和杰西卡正在听歌。)

艾玛: 杰西卡, 听这首歌的歌词。

杰西卡: 这首歌有什么特别?

艾玛: 这是现在在纽约很受欢迎的一出歌舞剧里的插曲。你喜欢吗?

杰西卡: 不怎么喜欢。我觉得情感色彩太浓了。

艾玛: 那就是这首歌这么受欢迎的原因。这首歌是芭芭拉·马丁录制



的。我听说这部剧第一天晚上首演时，她登台唱了这首歌，相当轰动。

杰西卡: 恐怕我对百老汇歌舞剧知道得相当有限。相比之下，我了解爵士音乐更多一点。

艾玛: 那你需要入门了。学校剧社要演一出歌舞剧。我们一起去看看，怎么样?

杰西卡: 我有更好的主意。我们去听爵士音乐会，由我来教教你爵士乐吧。

注释:

lyric

/'lɪrɪk/

*n.*歌词

emotional

/ɪ'məʊʃənəl/

*a.*感动人的

sensation

/sen'seɪʃən/

*n.*轰动

2. 逛酒吧 At pub

At pub



Waiter: Would you like to sit at a table or at the bar, sir?



Robert: Well, I don't like a bar stool. I'd like to sit somewhere not too near the band.

Waiter: OK. This way, please. Will this table be all right, sir?

Robert: Fine. Thank you.

Waiter: Here is the wine list. Do you have any preference?

Robert: Oh. I don't know what I want. I'm not much of a drinker.

Waiter: May I suggest some beer?

Robert: What sort of beer do you have?

Waiter: We have two kinds of beer, Qingdao beer and stout beer.

Robert: Which is better?

Waiter: Well, Qingdao beer is mild and stout beer is a little stronger.

Robert: Good. I'll have a glass of Qingdao beer, please.

Waiter: Yes, sir. I'll be back right away.



在酒吧

服务员：请问您是坐在餐桌旁还是坐在酒吧吧台呢，先生？

罗伯特：嗯，我不喜欢酒吧吧台的高脚凳。我想找个离乐队远点的地方。

服务员：好。这边请。先生，这张桌子行吗？

罗伯特：很好。谢谢。

服务员：这是酒单。您比较喜欢喝什么？

罗伯特：哦，我不知道要喝什么。我算不上是个喝酒的人。

服务员：我建议您喝点啤酒，好吗？

罗伯特：你们有什么啤酒？

服务员：我们有两种啤酒，青岛啤酒和黑啤酒。

罗伯特：哪种更好一些呢？

服务员：嗯，青岛啤酒味淡，黑啤酒味道稍微浓一些。

罗伯特：很好，我就来一杯青岛啤酒吧。

服务员：好的，先生，我马上就给您送来。

注释：

stool /stu:l/

n. 凳子

band /bænd/

n. 乐队

stout /staut/

n. 烈性啤酒

mild /maɪld/

a. 淡味的

3. 在KTV at KTV**Going to KTV**

Maya: OK, Allen. It's your turn. Are you ready?

Allen: I would rather listen. Isn't there anyone else who wants to sing?

Maya: Come on! For two hours we've been here, you haven't sung even one song!

Allen: I know, but... Hey, Stanley's here!



I've been waiting to hear him sing.

Maya: Why don't you put on an Elvis' song for him? He loves "The King".

Allen: I'll put the song at the front of the list.

(A few minutes later...)

Maya: Is Stanley still singing? He's hogging the mike!

Allen: I'm afraid so!

Maya: He sounds like a sick cow! I can't stand it any more.

Allen: Can we adjust the pitch a little? Maybe he'll sound better in a higher key.

Maya: I already tried that. Nothing seems to help.

Allen: Oh my God!

去唱卡拉 OK

玛雅：好，艾伦。该你了，准备好了吗？

艾伦：我比较想听歌。没有其他人要唱歌了吗？

玛雅：来吧！我们在这里两小时了，你连一首歌都没唱！

艾伦：我知道，不过……嘿，史丹利来了！我在等着听他唱。

玛雅：不如帮他点一首猫王的歌吧？他喜欢《国王》这首歌。

艾伦：我来插播。

(几分钟之后……)

玛雅：史丹利还在唱吗？他把着麦克风不放！

艾伦：恐怕是的！

玛雅：他的歌声像生病的牛！我再也无法忍受了。

艾伦：我们可以帮他调一个音吗？他唱高一点的音或许会比较好听。

玛雅：我已经试过了。看来是无药可救。

艾伦：天啊！

注释:

turn /tɜ:n/

n. (依次轮流时各自的)一次机会

adjust /ə'dʒʌst/

*v.*调整

pitch /pɪtʃ/

*n.*定调

key /ki:/

*n.*音调

4. 我的博客我做主Blog

Blog



Julia: Hey, Tommy, I read your blog a few days ago and I have a question.

Tommy: Yeah, what's up?

Julia: Well, first off, I thought it was pretty cool.

Tommy: Thanks. I don't put much work into it, but it passes the time.

Julia: You're a really good writer. I

was wondering if you could help me start up my own blog.

Tommy: Sure, I guess so. The website I use is free.

Julia: Oh, really? How do I make my own page?

Tommy: I have a friend that helps me out with that stuff, but I can show you some basic HTML if you want a custom page layout.

Julia: That sounds great, if you don't mind teaching me.

Tommy: It's cool. How about meeting up tomorrow in the library and I can teach you some stuff?

Julia: Sounds good. I'll meet you there.

博客

茱莉亚：嗨，我前几天看你的博客了，想问你一个问题。

汤米：嗯，什么问题？

茱莉亚：首先，我觉得你的博客非常酷。

汤米：谢谢，我没花很多功夫在博客上，但那能打发时间。

茱莉亚：你的文章写得真好。我在想你能不能帮我开一个博客。

汤米：当然可以。我用的网站是免费的。

茱莉亚：哦，是吗？我怎么做自己的网页？

汤米：我一个朋友帮我做的，但是如果你想设置一个自定义网页，我可以告诉你一些基本的HTML。

茱莉亚：如果你不介意教我的话，那当然好了。

汤米：好的。我们明天在图书馆见面，我教你一些东西怎么样？

茱莉亚：好的。明天见。

注释：

wonder /'wʌndə/

vi. 纳闷;想知道

site /saɪt/

n. 地点,场所

stuff /stʌf/

n. 物品, 东西

layout /'leɪaʊt/

n. 版面设计, 版面编排

5. 摄影 Taking photographs

Photography



Cathy: Congratulations, Green! You've won the Photographic Prize for this year.

Green: Wonderful! I'm really happy.

Cathy: Well, your pictures are very good. How long have you been a photographer?

Green: Not very long... for about three years.

Cathy: You are really good at that.

Green: Yeah. That's the one thing I really enjoy.

Cathy: What's the most exciting photo-



graphic job you've ever had?

Green: Oh, definitely the visit of Hawaii! I took hundreds of pictures.

Cathy: Really? Could I see them?

Green: Hold on a second. They are right here.

Cathy: Wow! These are gorgeous. They came out really well.

Green: Thanks.

摄影

凯西： 格林，祝贺你获得了今年的摄影大奖！

格林： 太好了，我真是开心极了。

凯西： 你的照片拍得非常好。你做摄影师多久了？

格林： 不长……三年吧。

凯西： 你干这个确实得心应手。

格林： 对。对摄影我真是乐此不疲。

凯西： 最让你激动的摄影工作是哪一次？

格林： 哦，毫无疑问是去夏威夷。我照

了上百张照片。

凯西：真的吗？我能看看照片吗？

格林：请稍等一会儿。都在这里。

凯西：噢！真美。照片都照得很好。

格林：谢谢！

注释：

photographer /fə'tɒgrəfə/

n. 摄影师

definitely /'defɪnɪtli/

adv. 肯定地

gorgeous /'gɔ:dʒəs/

a. 极好的

6. 体验网购 Experiencing shopping online

Shopping online



Jane: Hi, Tina! Would you please show me the online store?

Tina: Of course. Usually you need to login to a website and register to create an account. Be careful



when you fill in the form with your personal information.

Jane: I see. What should I do next?

Tina: Browse through the website and put the goods you have chosen into your shopping cart. Then click "go to shopping cart" link to place the order.

Jane: Things are chosen. What shall I do next?

Tina: Click "go to the cart and place the order" to confirm your order.

Jane: What about the delivery?

Tina: The goods will be sent to you in a few days.

Jane: Then what should I care about while shopping online?

Tina: Choose the secure website and be careful to give your personal information.

Jane: Then how should I pay?

Tina: You pay cash on delivery.

Jane: Tina, you said it. The virtual world is surely changing our way of shopping.

Tina: Yes. This is the most popular way of shopping right now.

网上购物

简：嗨，蒂娜！你能不能带我到网店看看。

蒂娜：当然了。一般情况下，你要登陆网页，注册开设账户。填充个人信息时要谨慎一些。

简：明白了。然后我怎么办呢？

蒂娜：浏览网页选择你要的东西，把它加到购物车里。然后点“去购物车”，链接到下订单的地方。

简：东西选好了，然后怎么做呢？

蒂娜：点“去购物车订货”确认你的订单。

简：那怎么送货呢？

蒂娜：几天之内他们会送货给你。



简：还有网上购物时我应该注意什么？

蒂娜：选择信用好的网站，填写个人信息要小心。

简：我怎么付钱呢？

蒂娜：货到付款。

简：蒂娜，你说得对。虚拟世界确实正在改变我们的购物方式。

蒂娜：是的，这是现在最流行的购物方式。

注释：

register /'redʒɪstə/

v.注册

cart /ka:t/

n.购物车

credit /'kredit/

n.信誉

7. “宅男宅女” Couch potato

TV programs



Sharon: Maggie, give me the remote controller. *Friends* is on.



Maggie: I'm watching *The X-Files*. This is the season finale. I don't want to miss it.

Sharon: You can record it on video-tape and watch it tomorrow. The best part of a videotape is that you can fast forward through commercials.

Maggie: OK, here you go!

Sharon: You know what! Brad Pitt will pop up on tonight's episode. His gig must be fun.

Maggie: Don't you think sitcoms have too many laugh tracks? There's laughing every five minutes.

Sharon: *Friends* is not a so-so comedy. It is a hit and a prime time show.

Maggie: I'm not anti *Friends*. I'm just getting tired of sitcoms. There



are so many TV stations showing them, channel after channel.

Sharon: That's why reality shows are a welcome trend nowadays.

Maggie: Yes, you bet!

Sharon: Which of the reality shows do you like?

Maggie: *Survivor* is my favorite.

电视节目

沙伦：玛吉，把遥控器给我！《老友记》开始演了。

玛吉：我正在看《X档案》。这是这一季的最后一集，我不想错过。

沙伦：你可以把它录下来，等到明天再看啊。看录影带的好处就是看到广告的时候你可以快进。

玛吉：好吧！拿去！

沙伦：你知道吗？布拉德·皮特在今晚这一集会会出现喔！他的客串演出一定很有趣。

玛吉：你不觉得情景喜剧放太多噱头笑声吗？每隔五分钟就听到一阵傻笑声。

沙伦：《老友记》可不是马马虎虎的喜剧，它可是广受好评，又排在黄金时段的节目。

玛吉：我不是说《老友记》不好，我只是很厌烦情景喜剧。好多电视台都在播情景喜剧，一个频道接着一个频道。

沙伦：所以，由观众报名参加演出的电视节目最近才会变得那么受欢迎。

玛吉：是的，我同意你的说法！

沙伦：那你最喜欢哪一个电视节目呢？

玛吉：《我要活下去》是我最喜欢的。

注释：

remote controller 遥控器

finale /fɪ'næl/

n. 结尾

forward /'fɔ:wəd/

adv. 向前



episode /'epɪsəʊd/

n. (电视等的) 连续剧的一出 (或一集)

gig /gɪg/ *v.* 公演

sitcom /'sɪtkɒm/

n. 情景喜剧

8. 爬山 Climbing mountains

Let's have a rest



Mark: Lucy, shall we take a rest for a while? I'm tired out and all in a sweat.

Lucy: OK. I'm already out of breath, too.

Mark: I regret taking so many things with me.

Lucy: I see eye to eye with you. They affect your speed.

Mark: Pass me the water bottle, please. My throat nearly burns.

Lucy: Here you are.

Mark: Thank you.



Lucy: How much farther do we have to walk?

Mark: There is about 600 meters left to our goal.

Lucy: We are climbing higher and higher.

Mark: Yes. What a beautiful scenery on the mountain!

Lucy: Look, two birds flew over our heads.

我们休息一下吧

沙伦：露西，我们休息一下好吗？我精疲力竭，而且满身大汗。

玛吉：好的，我也已经气喘吁吁了。

沙伦：我真后悔带这么多东西。

玛吉：我同意。它们影响你的速度。

沙伦：请把水瓶递给我。我的喉咙几乎要着火了。

玛吉：给你。

沙伦：谢谢。

玛吉： 我们还要走多远呢？

沙伦： 我们还剩下600米就到的目的地了。

玛吉： 我们越爬越高了。

沙伦： 是啊。山上的景色真美啊！

玛吉： 瞧，两只鸟从我们头上飞过去了。

注释：

sweat /swet/

n. 汗水

regret /rɪ'gret/

v. 后悔

affect /ə'fekt/

v. 影响

scenery /'si:nəri/

n. 风景

第五章 职场新人成功计

1. 求职前的迷茫 Seeking a job

How to find a job



Sally: The graduation is coming. I have to find a job, but I really don't know how to start. What is your suggestion?

Mike: Do you have the feeling that there are lots of jobs out there, but it seems you cannot find one?

Sally: How do you know?

Mike: I felt the same when I hunted for a job before. The first thing you should do is to know what you're good at and put it into words.

Sally: What do you mean?

Mike: Many of us are not proficient at talking or writing about ourselves, so you have to brush up on the techniques. But do look



objectively at yourself.

Sally: And may I decide which job suits me after knowing myself?

Mike: Right! Once you work out why you're a good match for a job, it will be easier to make convincing applications.

Sally: Then what should I do?

Mike: Target the right employers and reduce the possibility of repeated rejection.

Sally: I hate being rejected. It will make me unconfident.

Mike: For job hunter there's always disappointment, but we can turn disappointment into success. From every pursuit that doesn't bring the result you want there's something to be learned.

Sally: Thank you very much. You've been very helpful.

如何找工作

迈克：就要毕业了。我得找份工作，但我确实不知道从何下手。你有什么建议吗？

萨利：你是不是觉得很多工作摆在那里，可你却好像找不到一份工作。

迈克：你怎么知道的？

萨利：我以前找工作时也有同感。你首先要做的是了解自己擅长什么，并用语言表达出来。

迈克：什么意思？

萨利：许多人不擅长谈论或者描述自己，所以你需要练习这种技能。但一定要客观地看待自己。

迈克：了解自己之后，我就可以确定什么工作适合我了？

萨利：对！一旦你清楚自己适合什么工作，写出有说服力的求职申请就容易得多了。

迈克：那接下来要做什么呢？

萨利： 找对雇主，减少被人拒绝的机率。

萨利： 我讨厌被人拒绝。那会使我不自信。

迈克： 对于找工作的人来说总会有失望，但可以变失望为成功。每一次无果的求职经历都有值得学习的东西。

萨利： 太感谢你了。你真是帮了我大忙。

注释：

suggestion /sə'dʒestʃən/

n. 建议，示意

proficient /prəu'fɪʃənt/

a. 熟练的，精通的

brush up 提高，复习，温习，重温

objectively /əb'dʒektɪvli/

adv. 客观地

2. 求职面试 Having an interview

Interview



Lillian: Hello.

Manager: Hello, this is the manager of the

Customer Service Department
from ABC company. I wonder
if you would like to come for an
interview tomorrow?

Lillian: Sure. Thank you a lot.

Manager: You're welcome. Have a good
day.

(Lillian goes to the interview)

Manager: Hello, what's your job experience?

Lillian: Well, I've only had one job
before, so I'm great in customer
service.

Manager: Excellent. Now could you complete
this work ethic quiz?

Lillian: Sure thing.

(Lillian finishes the quiz)

Manager: Alright then, we'll review this
and give you a call back later.

Lillian: Thank you.

面试

莉莲：你好。

经理：你好，我是ABC公司客户服务部的经理。我想知道你明天能否过来面试？

莉莲：当然可以，非常感谢！

经理：不客气，祝你愉快。

（Lillian在接受面试）

经理：你好，你有什么工作经验吗？

莉莲：之前，我只做过一份工作，所以我非常擅长客服。

经理：很好。你能完成这份职业道德测验吗？

莉莲：当然可以。

（莉莲做完了测试）

经理：那好，我们会审核这份测试，晚些给你电话。

莉莲：谢谢你。

注释：

interview

/'Intəvju: /

n. 面谈, 面试

excellent /'eksələnt/

a. 出色的;杰出的

complete /kəm'pli:t/

vt. 完成;结束

ethic /'eθɪk/

a. 伦理(学)的;道德的

quiz /kwɪz/

n. 考查,测验

3. 初试锋芒 The new day

The first day



Tina: Hey! I'm Tina.

Jessica: Nice to see you, Tina. Today we'll introduce you to your colleagues.

Tina: Sure, where should we start?

Jessica: Well...

(Jessica explains the company's structure.)

Jessica: So, we get you a uniform now. What size do you wear?



Tina: I want a small one.

Jessica: Alright, here you go. You can wear any kind of pants, but no jeans.

Tina: Alright. Is there a policy against facial hair?

Jessica: No, try to keep yourself clean-cut and look proper.

Tina: Alright. I'll see you tomorrow. Have a good day!

Jessica: You, too.

第一天

蒂娜: 你好! 我是Tina。

杰西卡: 很高兴见到你。今天我们会给你介绍一下你的工作职责。

蒂娜: 好的, 我们从哪里开始呢?

杰西卡: 嗯……

(杰西卡讲解工作职责)

杰西卡: 那么, 我们现在发给你一套工作服。你穿多大号的?

4. 新人培训 The training for newcomers

Training



Steven: Hello, I'm Steven. I'll be your trainer today.

Jeff: Hi, nice to meet you. I'm Jeff.

Steven: Do you have any questions?

Jeff: I do have a couple of questions. What should I do if the customers can't afford their items?

Steven: Politely ask them if they would like to come back and put their items aside.

Jeff: And what if they threaten me?

Steven: Then call the manager.

Jeff: Alright, that makes sense. So what will we do today?

Steven: Well, let me show you how to scan an item into the cash register.

(Steven demonstrates how to do this)

Jeff: Oh, alright, so let the bar code facing the window.

Steven: Exactly. If they have any vegetables, use this button to weigh them.

Jeff: That seems pretty easy.

Steven: You'll get used to it. Well, that's it for today. Have a great evening.

培训

史蒂文：你好，我是**Steven**，今天由我给你们培训。

杰夫：你好，很高兴见到你，我是**Jeff**。

史蒂文：你有什么问题吗？

杰夫：我确实有些问题。如果顾客支付不起他们的物品我们应该怎么办？

史蒂文：礼貌地问他们能不能下次再来，然后把这些物品放到一边。

杰夫：如果他们威胁我怎么办？

史蒂文：给经理打电话。

杰夫：好的，这个行得通。那我们今天要做什么？

史蒂文：嗯，我给你示范一下怎么把物品扫描到收银机里。

（Steven演示如何做）

杰夫：好的，只要把条形码对着这个窗口就可以了。

史蒂文：完全正确，如果他们买的是蔬菜，只要按这个按钮，称一下就可以了。

杰夫：好的，看起来挺简单的。

史蒂文：你会习惯的，那今天就到此为止。祝你度过一个美好的夜晚。

注释：

couple /'kʌpl/

n. 几个, 三两个

afford /ə'fɔ:d/

vt. 买得起; 有足够的...

item /'aɪtəm/

n. 物料，项目

threaten /'θreɪn/

vt. 威胁，恐吓

scan /skæn/

vt. 扫描

register /'redʒɪstə/

n. 自动登录机，收银机

demonstrate /'demənstreɪt/

vt. 示范操作(产品)，展示

bar code 条码

5. 上班迟到 Being late for work

Being late for work



Tina: Oh, no! I'm gonna be late!

Linda: Well, hurry up and get ready!

Tina: I can't! I need to stop at the post office.

Linda: Well, what will happen if you're late?

Tina: I could get fired!



Linda: Forget about the post office, then.

Tina: I can't! I need to mail out this package. I'm screwed!

Linda: Well, talking about it doesn't help. Let's go.

Tina: You're right.

上班迟到

蒂娜：哦，我要迟到了！

琳达：噢，快点准备！

蒂娜：不行呀，我要在邮局停一下。

琳达：哦，你要是迟到了会怎么样？

蒂娜：可能会被开除。

琳达：那就别想什么邮局了。

蒂娜：不行啊，我要寄这个包裹。我要晕头转向了。

琳达：哦，说这些没用。咱们走吧。

蒂娜：你说的对。

注释：

gonna

/'gɔ:nə/

【美】【口】=going to



happen /'hæpən/

vi. (偶然)发生

fire /faɪə/

vt. 解雇, 开除

mail /meɪl/

vt. 邮递, 邮寄

package /'pækɪdʒ/

n. 包裹; 包

screwed /skru:d/

a. 用螺丝拧紧的; 螺丝状的

6. 办公琐事 The jobs

Trouble with computer



A: The new computer software is driving me crazy! I really need a break!

B: I know what you mean, Jasmine. I've had nothing but trouble with it. They say it's supposed to be easy!

A: That's what I've heard. But as far as I'm concerned, it needs a genius to



figure it out. Can you pass me the sugar, please?

B: Sure. Why don't you sit down for a minute? You haven't taken a rest all the morning.

A: You know there are a lot of files waiting for me. I must finish them as soon as possible.

B: Poor Jasmine. I hope I can do you a favour.

A: Thank you, Jack. But you know it's my duty.

B: Oh, I nearly forget one thing.

A: What is it?

B: The boss let me tell you to type a report for him before getting off job.

A: OK, I know. Thank you. I'll finish it on time.

电脑问题

- A: 这个新的电脑软件快要把我逼疯了！
我真要休息了！
- B: 我明白你的意思，茉莉。除了麻烦，
它什么也没给我。他们说这应该是很容易的。
- A: 我是这么听说的。可让我说，只有天才才能弄清它是怎么回事。你能把糖递给我吗？
- B: 当然。你为什么不坐下来歇会儿呢？
你一上午都没休息。
- A: 你要知道很多文件在等着我呢。我必须尽快处理完它们。
- B: 可怜的茉莉。真希望我能帮到你。
- A: 谢谢你杰克。但是你知道这是我的职责。
哦，差点忘了一件事情。
- B: 是什么？
- A: 老板让你下班前打份报告给他。
- B: 好的，我知道了。谢谢你。我会按时
- A: 完成的。



注释：

software /'sɒftweə/

n. 软件

suppose /sə'pəʊz/

v. 猜想，假设，认为，料想

genius /'dʒiːnjəs/

n. 天才，天赋，精神

favour /'feɪvə/

n. 支持，帮助

7. 加班事宜 Working overtime

Working hours



Mary: How many hours a week do you work in the United States?

Jimmy: Normally forty hours a week from Monday to Friday. But working hours vary according to the company.

Mary: What if you work more than forty hours a week? Do you get paid?



Jimmy: Certainly. Most workers get paid by the hour and if you work more than forty hours or on weekends, you get paid overtime.

Mary: That sounds like a pretty fair system.

Jimmy: Except that you're in a high position. Most company executives cannot get overtime pay.

工作时间

玛丽：你们在美国一周工作几小时？

吉米：正常的工作时间是周一到周五，**40**个小时。但是工作时间因公司而异。

玛丽：如果超时怎么办？有钱领吗？

吉米：当然。大部分的员工都是按小时计酬，如果工作超过**40**个小时或周末上班，都可以拿到加班费。

玛丽：那似乎是个公平的制度。

吉米：职位高的除外。大部分的公司经理是拿不到加班费的。



注释：

normally /'nɔ:məli/

ad. 正常，通常，按惯例

according to

根据，按照

certainly /'sə:tənli/

ad. 无疑地；必定；确实

overtime /'əʊvətaɪm/

n. 加班；加班时间

position /pə'zɪʃən/

n. 位置，地点，方位

executive /ɪg'zekjʊtɪv/

n. 经理；业务主管

8. 工作压力 Working pressure

Working pressure



Lillian: It is becoming impossible to finish my work.

Linda: Why?

Lillian: I have so many things to do. I'm



so stressed out that the work isn't funny any more.

Linda: Well, chill out today and have the day off.

Lillian: Yeah, but what I can think about is the deadline I need to meet.

Linda: At work?

Lillian: Yeah, I have to get the entire back room reorganized by Friday.

Linda: What else?

Lillian: I need to come up with a new marketing scheme for our dairy products also.

Linda: It sounds to me like they are exploiting you, man.

Lillian: You think so?

Linda: Yeah, I would quit if I were you.

工作压力

莉莲：工作越来越难以完成了。

琳达：为什么？

莉莲：我有太多的工作要做，压力太大了，甚至觉得工作很没意思。

琳达：今天你休假，放松一下吧。

莉莲：是的，但是我满脑子想的都是需要面对的截止日期。

琳达：工作上的？

莉莲：是的，截止到周五我得把整个里屋重新整理一下。

琳达：还有其他的吗？

莉莲：我还要给我们的奶制品提出新的市场策划。

琳达：听起来他们好像只是在利用你。

莉莲：你这么想的吗？

琳达：是啊，如果我是你的话就辞职。

注释：

be stressed out 饱受压力，紧张的

chill out 冷静下来，放松

have the day off 休假

come up with 提出，想出

scheme /ski:m/ n.计划，方案

9. 请病假 Asking for a sick leave

You should see the doctor



Raphael: Are you all right?

Marilyn: I am all right. It's just my nose.
I have a headache, too.

Raphael: Perhaps you should see a
doctor.

Marilyn: No, no. I think I am okay. The
terrible weather makes me feel
bad.

Raphael: I still think you should go to
see a doctor. You have been
sneezing since you entered
the office this morning. Ask Mr.
Smith for a sick leave.

Marilyn: I can't. I have so much work to
do. I don't think Mr. Smith will
agree.

Raphael: If you don't want to see a
doctor, you can go home and



have a rest. You can't do things while feeling so sick.

Marilyn: If I take this afternoon off, no one will sort the mail.

Raphael: Let me help you. And I think Mr. Smith will understand.

Marilyn: Thank you. Then I will go to Mr. Smith and ask for the leave.

你应该去看医生

拉斐尔：你没事吧？

玛丽琳：我还行。就是鼻子不太舒服，头疼。

拉斐尔：也许你应该去看医生。

玛丽琳：不，不去了。我想我还好。糟糕的天气使我感觉不舒服。

拉斐尔：我还是觉得你应该去看医生。你从今天早上进办公室开始就一直打喷嚏。向史密斯先生请个病假吧。

玛丽琳：我不能请假。我还有很多工作

要做。我觉得史密斯先生不会同意的。

拉斐尔：如果不想去看医生，你可以回家好好休息。病的这么重，你下午还是什么也干不了。

玛丽琳：如果我下午请假，那邮件就没人分类了。

拉斐尔：我来帮你吧。我觉得史密斯先生会理解的。

玛丽琳：谢谢你。那我去找史密斯先生请假了。

注释：

sneeze /sni:z/

v. 打喷嚏

sort /sɔ:t/

v. 将……分类

10. 跳槽 Job hopping

Job hopping



Tina: How's your job at the state-owned enterprise?

Julia: Oh, I no longer work there. I'm working in a multinational corporation.

Tina: You changed your job again? Why did you move so frequently?

Julia: I want to try different things before I find the one I really like.

Tina: Why don't you stick with one job longer?

Julia: I could handle everything pretty well in the old position, so I decided to move around and learn something new.

Tina: How's your current job going?

Julia: I'm satisfied with it. I can broaden my experience, learn lots of

new things and have more development opportunities.

Tina: Sounds good, but I still think perhaps you should have a clear career path to follow, and then decide whether to change your job or not.

Julia: Yes, you're right. When I graduated, I didn't know what I really wanted to do or what I could do. Now things are becoming much clearer.

Tina: Do you have a definite career path yet?

Julia: I'm not sure. But I like the job I'm doing now.

跳槽

蒂娜：你在那家国营企业工作得怎样？

茱莉亚：我已经不在那儿了，现在我在一家跨国公司上班。

蒂娜：你又换工作了？怎么跳得这么频繁呀？

茉莉亚：我想试试不同的工作，然后看看到底喜欢哪个。

蒂娜：你怎么不在一个工作岗位上多做一段时间呢？

茉莉亚：原来的工作我都能处理得很好，所以我想换换环境，学点新东西。

蒂娜：现在这工作怎么样呀？

茉莉亚：挺满意的。我可以拓宽视野，学到很多新东西，还能得到更多发展机会。

蒂娜：不错，但我还是认为你应该先找到一个明确的职业生涯规划，然后再决定要不要换工作。

茉莉亚：没错，你说的很对。刚毕业的时候，我不知道自己想做什么，也不知道自己能做什么，现在我清楚多了。

蒂娜：现在有明确的职业生涯规划了吗？

茉莉亚：还是不太清楚，不过我还挺喜欢现在的工作的。

注释：

state-owned enterprise 国营企业

multi national corporation 跨国公司

current /'kə:rənt/

a. 现时的, 当前的; 现行的

broaden /'brɔ:dn/

vi. 变宽, 变阔; 扩大

path /pa:θ/

n. 通路, 道路, 途径

definite /'defɪnɪt/

a. 明确的, 确切的

11. 升职加薪 Raise and promotion

Getting a promotion



H: Come in. Please sit down.

G: Thanks, Mr. Harold. I'm Georgia.

H: OK, what can I do for you, Georgia?

G: Well, I've worked here as a typist for about a year and I'd like to have a chance for advancement.



H: What job are you applying for?

G: I'd like a secretarial job in the clerical department.

H: Is your English good enough?

G: I think so. I'm studying English at a language school.

H: What about your typing speed?

G: I can type 50 words per minute.

H: OK. Georgia, you have the seniority and I know you can do the job. Do you understand probation?

G: Yes, I think so. I have 30 days to learn the job, right?

H: That's right. You can start on the 1st of July, OK?

G: No problem. I'll try my best to learn the new job.

H: Well, good luck.

升迁

H: 进来，请坐。

G: 谢谢，Harold先生。我是Georgia。

H: 我能帮你做什么，Georgia?

G: 我在此做打字员已一年了，我期望一个升迁的机会。

H: 你要求做什么工作?

G: 我希望到办公部门做秘书事务工作。

H: 你的英语很好吗?

G: 我认为还行。我一直在一所语言学校学习英语。

H: 你的打字速度如何?

G: 每分钟50个单词。

H: 好吧，Georgia，你具备应有资历，你会把工作做好的。你了解公司的试用期情况吗?

G: 是的。我需要30天来学会新工作，对吗?

H: 是的，你可以从7月1日开始，好吗?

G: 没问题。我将尽力做好新工作。

H: 那么，祝你好运。



注释：

typist	/'taipist/
<i>n.</i> 打字员，打字者	
advancement	/əd'va:nsmənt/
<i>n.</i> 前进，进步，提升	
secretarial	/,sekrə'terɪəl/
<i>a.</i> 秘书的	
clerical	/'klerɪkəl/
<i>a.</i> 办事员的	
seniority	/'si:nɪ'ə:rəti/
<i>n.</i> 资历，工龄	
probation	/prəu'beɪʃən/
<i>n.</i> 试用期；见习期	

12. 职场充电 Job training

On-the-job training



Jenny: Can we have dinner together?

Sue: Sorry, I'll have to rush to my English class after work.

Jenny: OK, then how about tomorrow?



Sue: I'm terribly sorry that my classes are scheduled from Monday to Saturday.

Jenny: That's all right. We can do it on Sunday. But why do you study English so hard? You must be tired after the whole day's work. Why not simply take a break instead?

Sue: Well, my work prompts me to learn English. Our company is planning to start a branch in Australia. I must prepare in advance since I may have to use English in my daily work one day.

Jenny: Oh, I see. You take the initiative to improve your English competency. You have to pay the check, right?

Sue: Yes. I have to do this, or someday I may lose my job. Nowadays,



when our company recruits new employees, the English level is listed as an important criterion.

Jenny: Yeah, many companies are doing the same thing. They believe the lack of English-speaking personnel may hold back their global plans .

职场充电

珍妮：一起吃晚饭可以吗？

苏：对不起，下班了我得赶紧去上英语课。

珍妮：好吧，那明天怎么样？

苏：实在是对不起，我的课从周一一直排到周六。

珍妮：没关系，可以等周日嘛。你怎么这样用功学英语呀？上了一天的班，肯定很累了，为什么不回家休息呢？

苏：是这样的，我的工作要求我去学

英语。公司正计划在澳洲开一家分公司。我必须提前准备，因为有一天我可能会在日常工作中用到英语。

珍妮：哦，我明白了。你主动提高自己的英语能力。自己付学费，是这样吗？

苏：没错，我必须这样做，不然有一天我可能会失业。现在公司招聘新人的时候，英语能力是一个很重要的录用标准。

珍妮：是啊，很多公司都是这样的。他们认为如果少了英语人才，可能会阻碍公司的全球发展计划。

注释：

schedule

/'skedʒul/

vt. 安排, 预定

take a break

休息一会儿

prompt

/prɒmpt/

vt. 促使



in advance	提前
initiative	/ɪˈnɪʃətɪv/
<i>n.</i> 主动权	
competency	/'kɒmpɪtənsɪ/
<i>n.</i> 能力	
recruit	/rɪ'kru:t/
<i>vt.</i> 雇用, 聘用	
criterion	/kraɪ'tɪəriən/
<i>n.</i> 标准, 准则, 尺度	

13. 辞职 Resignation

Quitting the job



Colleague: I've been so tired recently.
I've been trying, but I don't think I'm up to this job.

Shirley: You need to take a break, maybe a vacation.

Colleague: Oh, yes. I've run out of steam.
To be honest, I want to be in a different environment.



Shirley: Really?

Colleague: Yes, I don't want to be stuck in a rut. I want to move on.

Shirley: Have you decided?

Colleague: Yes, I want to get a better job.

Shirley: Could you tell me why you want to quit?

Colleague: I quit because of the dissatisfying salary and the trouble in getting along with my colleague.

Shirley: Oh, that's terrible. Do you want to get a higher salary in our company?

Colleague: I'm afraid not. I've promised my girlfriend. We'll travel southwards and find a job that offers higher salary.

Shirley: OK, I'd like to say that I've really



enjoyed working with you. I think you have to work harder at your new job and then you can ask for higher pay.

Colleague: Thank you so much for your advice.

Shirley: And every best wish for your new job.

Colleague: Thank you.

辞职

同事：最近很累，我一直都很努力，但是我觉得我不能胜任这个工作。

雪莉：你需要休息一下，或许需要休假。

同事：噢，的确。我已经失去动力了。说实话，我想换个环境。

雪莉：这样？

同事：是的，我不想停滞不前。我要进步。

雪莉：你决定了吗？

同事：是的，我想找个更好的工作。

雪莉：能告诉我为什么要辞职吗？



同事：我辞职只是因为对工资不满意，和同事也相处不好。

雪莉：哦，那很糟糕。你想在公司拿到更高的薪水吗？

同事：不想了。我答应过我女朋友。我们一起到南方找个薪水更高的工作。

雪莉：好。我想说我和你共事很开心。我想你得在新工作岗位上更加努力工作，才可以要求更高的薪酬。

同事：谢谢你的建议。

雪莉：祝你在新工作里一切都好。

同事：谢谢。

注释：

vacation /və'keɪʃən/

n. 假期

rut /rʌt/

n. 惯例，凹槽

quit /kwɪt/

v. 离开，放弃，辞职，停止

dissatisfying /,dɪs'sætɪsfajɪŋ/



a. 令人不满意的

southwards /'sauθwədz/

adv. 向南方, 往南方

14. 自己创业 Starting a business

Starting a business



Tom: I really want to start my own business.

Jane: What? Why?

Tom: I've always wanted to have one and I could work for myself.

Jane: Well, but that's a lot of hard work.

Tom: I know, but I'm willing to do it.

Jane: Even if you have to take the loans and everything?

Tom: Yep.

Jane: Well. I think you should go for it. I believe in you.

Tom: Thanks. That means a lot. I think I will.



Jane: I'll help you out whatever I can do.

创业

汤姆：我想开一家公司。

简：什么？为什么呀？

汤姆：我一直想开一家公司，可以自己当老板。

简：确实，但有很多很艰难的工作。

汤姆：我知道，但是我很愿意去做。

简：甚至要贷款还有其他很多事呢？

汤姆：是的。

简：哦，那么我觉得你应该去做。我相信你。

汤姆：谢谢，这对我来说很重要。我会努力的。

简：我会尽我所能帮你的。

注释：

loan /ləʊn/

n. 贷款

yep /jep/

ad. 【美】【俚】是

believe /bɪ'li:v/

vt. 相信;信任

however /hau'evə/

ad. 无论如何,不管怎样

第六章 背上行囊游世界

1. 计划出游 Planning the trip

Making a traveling plan



Tom: I heard you are traveling to America.

Julia: Yes. My visa has come through.

Tom: When will you leave?

Julia: Next Wednesday. And that's what I want to talk to you. What should I take with me?

Tom: How long are you going for?

Julia: Two weeks.

Tom: You needn't take too many clothes with you. You can buy them quite cheaply in the USA.

Julia: I see. What about gifts? What kind of things do Americans like? I am completely in the dark.

Tom: Anything that is recognizably Chinese. But since your luggage allowance is only 20 kilos, you'd



better buy things that don't weigh too much.

Julia: Your tips have helped me a great deal. Thanks a lot.

Tom: It's my pleasure. All the very best to you.

制订旅游计划

汤姆：听说你要去美国旅行。

朱莉亚：是的，我的签证已经办妥了。

汤姆：什么时候动身？

朱莉亚：下周三。我正想和你说呢。我应该带些什么东西呢？

汤姆：你打算去多长时间？

朱莉亚：两周。

汤姆：用不着带太多衣服，在美国买衣服是相当便宜的。

朱莉亚：我明白了。关于礼物呢？美国人喜欢什么样的东西？我一无所知。

汤姆：凡是有中国特色的东西都行。但

是，因为你的行李限额只有20公斤，你最好买些不太重的东西。

朱莉亚：你的建议，对我帮助很大。太感谢了。

汤姆：不用谢。祝你一切顺利。

注释：

visa /'vi:zə/

n. 签证

luggage /'lʌgɪdʒ/

n. 行李

allowance /ə'laʊəns/

n. 限额

经典释疑

I am completely in the dark. 我一无所知。**in the dark**指“在暗处”，**to be completely in the dark**的字面意思是“完全处在黑暗中”，常用来指“对某事一无所知”或“被蒙在鼓里”。有时，此语还以**keep someone in the dark**的形式出现，意思是“把某人



蒙在鼓里”。例如：He is a dictator. Though I'm the production manager, I'm completely in the dark as to what to do next. 他是个独裁者。虽然我是生产部经理，但是对下一步该做什么却一无所知。

2. 选择旅行社 Choosing the travel agency

Choosing the travel agency



Travel Agent: What can I do for you?

Lillian: I was wondering what kind of rates you offer for hotels in London.

Travel Agent: At this time of year? I could find some really cheap hotels.

Lillian: That's great. Could you give me some examples?

Travel Agent: Well, here's a list of the hotels we work with.



Lillian: Wow, there are some pretty big names here.

Travel Agent: Yup. The rates vary. Which one do you like? I can call them up for you.

Lillian: That would be awesome. This seems like the best deal I have had.

Travel Agent: I'm glad you came to us.

Lillian: Here, I'd like to know the rates on these hotels.

Travel Agent: Alright. If you give me a few minutes, I will get the information for you right now.

Lillian: Thanks a lot.

Travel Agent: You're welcome.

选择旅行社

旅行社：我能帮您什么吗？

莉莲：我想知道伦敦的酒店你们提供什

么优惠。

旅行社：现在这个时候吗？我们确实能找到一些便宜的。

莉莲：太好了。你能给我些实例吗？

旅行社：好的，这是和我们合作的酒店名单。

莉莲：哇，这上面有好多知名酒店呀。

旅行社：是的。优惠也有好多种。你喜欢哪一家？我可以给他们打电话问一问。

莉莲：那就太好了。这看起来是我有过的最好的旅行待遇了。

旅行社：我很高兴您能来我们这里。

莉莲：嘿，我想知道这些酒店的优惠条件。

旅行社：好的。您稍等几分钟，我马上给你找这些信息。

莉莲：多谢了。

旅行社：不用客气。

注释：

offer /'ɔ:fə/

vt. 给予，提供；拿出，出示

vary /'veəri/

vt. 使不同；变更；修改

awesome /'ɔ:səm/

a. 令人敬畏的；可怕的；有威严的

information /,ɪnfə'meɪʃən/

n. 报告；消息；报导；情报资料

yup /jʌp/

int. (俚语) 是的；对啊

work with 与……共事

3. 旅馆住宿 Hotel accommodation

Check-in



Clerk: Hi. Good afternoon. What can I do for you?

Anne: I have a reservation.

Clerk: May I ask your name?

Anne: Anne Smith.



Clerk: Just a moment, please. Oh, Miss Smith. Yes, we have a reservation for you. Would you please fill out the registration card with your name, address and your passport number and be sure to sign it.

Anne: Is it all right?

Clerk: Yes. Will you pay by cash or by credit card?

Anne: Cash.

Clerk: In that case we need a one-night's deposit. That'll be eighty dollars.

Anne: OK. Here you are.

Clerk: Here's your receipt and your key.

Anne: Thank you. And I'd like a wake-up call at 7 o'clock tomorrow morning.

Clerk: Please call the hotel operator to arrange for a wake-up call.

Anne: OK. By the way, can I mail items from the hotel?

Clerk: Yes, we have mail service. You can call the business service center. They know the ropes.

酒店入住

职员： 嗨！下午好，我能为您效劳吗？

安妮： 我有预订房间。

职员： 请问您的名字？

安妮： 安妮·史密斯。

职员： 请稍等。哦，史密斯小姐。是的，我们替您预留了房间。请您填写这张登记卡，写上您的姓名、住址、护照号码，并且务必要签名。

安妮： 这样可以吗？

职员： 可以。您付现金还是用信用卡？

安妮： 付现金。

职员： 这样，我们要收取一晚的保证金，80美元。

安妮：好，给你。

职员：这是您的收据和钥匙。

安妮：谢谢。我想请你们在明天早上7点打电话叫我。

职员：请打给旅馆接线生安排叫早电话。

安妮：好的。另外，我能从酒店邮寄东西吗？

职员：可以，我们有邮寄服务。您可以拨打商务服务中心电话。他们业务精通。

注释：

reservation /,rezə'veiʃən/

n. 预订

registration /,redʒɪ'streɪʃən/

n. 登记

arrange /ə'reɪndʒ/

v. 安排

经典释疑

They know the ropes. 他们精通业务。

The ropes 指“船上控制帆的绳索”。

人们认为，只有老水手才熟悉并掌握

如何使用这些绳索，所以，**know the ropes**就是常用来喻指“精通某事的好手”或“精通业务”。例如：**It usually takes half a year for a new employee to know the ropes in the company.**一般来说，新雇员要花半年的时间才能熟悉公司的业务。

4. 游在欧洲 **Traveling in Europe**

Traveling in Europe



Linda: I love European parks and gardens.

David: Greenwich Park is lovely, and the observatory is very interesting. You can stand astride the Prime Meridian at Greenwich and have one foot on the Western Hemisphere and one foot on the Eastern.

Linda: That'll be fun. We must take a photo.

David: Look, everybody, have you seen the Houses of Parliament behind us and Westminster Abbey?

Linda: Yes, the most interesting place. All the kings and queens of England have been crowned there.

David: Yes, except Edward V and Edward VIII.

Linda: And many famous people are buried there, including kings and poets.

David: Yes, indeed.

Linda: Oh, we must be approaching the heart of the city now. There's the Natwest Tower.

David: Yes, it's the tallest building in the U.K. now.

Linda: Now we are coming up to London Bridge. Next, we're going to the

Tower of London.

David: Oh, splendid. What a sight! I am in the seventh heaven!

欧洲旅游

琳达：我喜欢欧洲的公园和花园。

戴维：格林威治公园很可爱，天文台也真的很有趣。你可以横跨在格林威治子午线的零度线上，那样就一只脚在西半球，一只脚在东半球了。

琳达：太有趣了，一定要照张相。

戴维：看，你们看到我们身后的议会大厦和威斯敏斯特教堂了吗？

琳达：是的，最有趣的地方。英国所有的国王和王后都在那里加冕。

戴维：是的，除了爱德华五世和爱德华八世。

琳达：并且很多著名人物包括国王和诗人都安葬在这里。

戴维：的确是这样。

琳达：噢，我们现在一定是到了市中

心。这里有奈西塔楼。

戴维：是的，它是英国现今最高的建筑物。

琳达：现在我们将去伦敦桥，然后去伦敦塔。

戴维：噢，太漂亮了。风景太好了！我太高兴了！

注释：

observatory /əb'zə:vɪtəri/

n. 天文台

astride /ə'straɪd/

prep. 跨在…上

crown /kraun/

v. 加冕

bury /'beri/

v. 埋葬

splendid /'splendɪd/

a. 极好的

经典释疑

I am in the seventh heaven! 我太高兴

了！the seventh heaven原指“伊斯兰教中的第七个天堂”或“第七个极乐世界”，但be in the seventh heaven现在常用来喻指“非常高兴”或“感到特别幸福”。例如：We were all in the seventh heaven when we finally got to the top of the mountains.当我们终于登上山顶时，别提我们有多高兴了。

5. 郊外野餐 Having a picnic

Having a picnic



Peter: It's so nice to have a picnic on such a lovely day.

Joan: Yes. Let's start right now. First of all, we have to clean the grill. Could you please take care of the grill while I go to collect some wood for starting a fire?

Peter: OK. Leave it to me.

Joan: We have enough wood now. Let's



start a fire and begin roasting the chicken.

Peter: Good. Here is the chicken, oil, salt and chili. I'm going to prepare the plates. Call me if you need my help.

Joan: Fine. I can handle it myself.

Peter: Oh, it smells delicious! I guess it's done now? Don't overcook the chicken.

Joan: It is still bloody inside. I should cook it through...OK! Come and get some tender and juicy chicken.

Peter: My mouth is already watering. Oh, it's fantastic!

Joan: I'm glad you like it. Have you brought any drinks?

Peter: Yes, there is beer and orange juice in the cooler.

Joan: Oh, and pickles, too. Do you need some?

Peter: No, thanks. This is good enough!

野餐

彼得：这样的好天气来野餐真是太好了。

乔安：是啊，我们现在就开始吧。首先得把烧烤架洗干净。你能去洗一下烧烤架吗？我去捡一些生火的柴。

彼得：好的，交给我吧。

乔安：柴火已经够了。我们生火，开始烤鸡吧！

彼得：太好了。这里是鸡，还有油、盐、辣椒。我去准备餐盘。需要帮忙的话叫我。

乔安：好，我自己能搞定。

彼得：噢，好香啊！我猜已经烤好了吧？不要把鸡肉烤得太熟了。

乔安：鸡肉里面还血淋淋的呢，我该把它烤透一点……好啦！过来尝尝鲜嫩多汁的鸡肉吧。

彼得： 我已经在流口水了。噢，太棒了！

乔安： 你能喜欢我太高兴了。你带喝的了
了吗？

彼得： 是的，冷藏箱里有啤酒和橙汁。

乔安： 哦，还有泡菜啊！你来点吗？

彼得： 不用了，谢谢。这个已经够好了。

注释：

grill

/grɪl/

v. 烧烤

roast

/rəʊst/

v. 烘烤

prepare

/prɪ'peə/

v. 准备；使……准备好

handle

/'hændl/

v. 对待，处理

overcook

/,əʊvə'kʊk/

v. 使煮过头，将...煮老

tender

/'tendə/

a. 嫩的，柔软的

juicy

/'dʒu:si/

a. 多汁的

water /'wɔ:tə/

v. 流口水

bloody /'blʌdi/

a. 血腥的

fantastic /fæn'tæstɪk/

a. 极好的

6. 照相留念 Taking photos

Photo taking



Betty: Do you have any extra batteries?

Julie: No, I don't. Why?

Betty: My camera is running out of battery...

Julie: That sucks. I still have my camera on me. Do you want me to take some pictures?

Betty: Sure. I'll use yours if you won't take pictures.

Julie: Alright. Hey, take a picture of



that.,

Betty: Yeah, that's awesome.

Julie: Yeah. Upload those pictures as soon as we get back!

Betty: I definitely will. My sisters are going to be jealous for they didn't come along.

Julie: (laughs) Yeah, probably! This is the coolest vacation I've ever had.

拍照

贝蒂：你还有多余的电池吗？

朱莉：没有。干什么？

彼得：我的相机电池电量不足了…

乔安：那太糟糕了。我的相机还有电池，你想让我拍照吗？

彼得：好的。如果你不想拍的话就借给我吧。

乔安：好的。嘿，拍张那个的照片。

彼得：好的，太美了。



乔安：是啊。我们一回去就把这些照片上传到网上。

彼得：肯定的。我的姐妹没有一起来肯定会嫉妒的。

乔安：（笑）是啊，很可能哦！这是我度过的最美好的假期。

注释：

battery /'bætəri/

n. 电池; 蓄电池

camera /'kæməərə/

n. 照相机; 摄影机

awesome /'ɔ:səm/

a. 令人敬畏的; 可怕的; 有威严的

upload /ʌp'ləʊd/

v. 上传

definitely /'defɪnɪtli/

ad. 明确地; 明显地, 清楚地

jealous /'dʒeləs/

a. 妒忌的

第七章 商海沉浮看人生百态

1. 产品介绍 Presenting Products

Introducing the Product



Cathy: Ah, yes, this is the model I was interested in.

Black: I am very happy to give you any further information you need on it.

Cathy: Yes, what about the specifications?

Black: If I may refer you to page eight of the brochure, you'll find all the specifications there.

Cathy: Ah, yes. Now what about service life?

Black: Our tests indicate that this model has a service life of at least 50,000 hours.

Cathy: Is that an average for this type of equipment?

Black: Oh, no, far from it. That's about 5,000 hours longer than any other

models in its price range.

Cathy: That's impressive. Now what happens if something goes wrong when we're using it?

Black: If that were to happen, please contact our nearest agent and they'll send someone round immediately.

Cathy: I see. Do you offer discounts for regular purchases?

Black: Yes, we do. The discount is about 5% off, but that depends on the size order.

Cathy: Yes, of course. Well, thank you very much, Mr. Black.

Black: Not at all, I hope we shall be hearing from you very shortly.

Cathy: I expect you will, Mr. Black.

介绍产品

凯西：啊，是的，这就是我所感兴趣的那种样式。

布莱克：我很乐意提供您所需要的关于它

的进一步的信息。

凯西：好的，都有哪些规格呢？

布莱克：如果您看一下手册的第8页，就会在那儿找到所有的规格。

凯西：哦，好的。关于使用寿命呢？

布莱克：我们的实验表明这种样式至少可以使用**50000**小时。

凯西：这是这种设备的平均数据吗？

布莱克：不是的，相差很多。这种比在它的价格范围内的任何其他样式都要高出**5000**小时左右。

凯西：这一点给我印象颇深。不过如果这种设备在我们使用的时候发生故障，该怎么办呢？

布莱克：一旦发生那样的情况，同我们最近的办事处联系，他们会马上派人过去的。

凯西：我明白了。长期购买，你们提供折扣吗？

布莱克：是的，我们确实这样做。折扣

5%左右，但那还要根据订货的多少来定。

凯西：那当然了。好了，非常感谢，布莱克先生。

布莱克：不客气。希望尽快听到您的消息。

凯西：我想会的，布莱克先生。

注释：

specification /spesɪfɪ'keɪʃən/

n. 规格，说明书，详述

indicate /ɪn'dɪkeɪt/

v. 表明，指出，预示

figure /'fɪgə/

n. 数字，人物，图形

impressive /ɪm'presɪv/

a. 给人深刻印象的

purchase /'pɜ:tʃəs/

n. 购买

2. 商品展览 Trade fair

At the trade fair



Salesman: Good morning. May I help you?

Importer: I wonder if you can give me more information about this computer model you're showing.

Salesman: I'd be glad to help. Would you like our promotional brochure?

Importer: Thank you. I see your computer is fully IBM compatible.

Salesman: Yes, this model can run any software or DOS program which IBM personal computer can run.

Importer: These models seem to be quite small.

Salesman: Yes, one of the problems our company had tried to solve when we worked on

this model was to do away with the bulk of IBM desktops and their clones. Our computer is only 11 pounds.

Importer: Remarkable! There's nothing better than finding a problem and solving it to develop a good product. Are all the components made here in Taiwan?

Salesman: Yes, we subcontract part of the work, but only in Taiwan. These computers are made here.

Importer: May I ask what company you work for?

Salesman: I represent Reese Computer and Supply Company. We're a mail-order company and offer volume discount. Would you like a factory tour and perhaps even to visit one or



two of our subcontractors?

Importer: Yes, if it won't take too long to arrange it. I'm due to fly back to the United States on Friday.

Salesman: I'm sure we can arrange it before then. How about meeting the founder of our company? Would you like talking with him about our upcoming models?

Importer: Yes, I think that would be useful. Thank you for your help.

在商展

推销员：早上好，需要帮忙吗？

进口商：我想你可不可以给我更多有关你们正在展示的这台计算机模型的信息呢？

推销员：很高兴能帮助您。给您看看我们的宣传资料包怎么样？

进口商：谢谢。我发现你们的电脑可以与

IBM完全兼容。

推销员：是的，这个模型能运行IBM个人计算机所能运行的所有的软件或DOS程序。

进口商：这些模型看起来很小。

推销员：是的，我们公司要解决的问题之一就是，我们研发这一电脑时，我们尽力摆脱IBM台式电脑的影响以及对它们的种种克隆。我们的电脑只有11磅。

进口商：了不起！没有什么能比得上看到问题并解决它从而创建一个好产品好的了。零部件全都是台湾制造的吗？

推销员：是的，我们只在台湾做一些分包。这些电脑是在这生产的。

进口商：请问您服务于哪家公司呢？

推销员：我是李斯电脑供应公司的代表，是大规模的折扣邮购公司。您想参观我们的工厂或许一两个分包商？

进口商：若不会花太多时间安排的话，我很乐意。我预定星期五乘机回美国。

推销员：我保证能在那之前完成。见见我们公司的创办人怎么样？您是否有兴趣和他谈论有关即将面世的这一模型？

进口商：是的，我认为那很有用。感谢您帮忙。

注释：

literature /'lɪtərətʃə/

n. 文献，文学，著作

compatible /kəm'pæətəbl/

a. 兼容的，能共处的，可并立的

component /kəm'pəʊnənt/

n. 成分，组建，原件

founder /'faʊndə/

n. 创始人，建立者，翻砂工

3. 商品询价 Price inquiry

Price inquiry



Abigail: We have a steady demand for high-class goods of gloves, especially in white color.

Jenny: Thank you for your interest in our product.

Abigail: Do you have price lists and an illustrated catalogue?

Jenny: Yes, here are our catalogue and the current price list.

Abigail: Thank you.

Jenny: You can see the material is superior and our products are in the latest styles. You will agree that our products and price appeal to the most selective buyer.

Abigail: Would you please quote us CIF price and send us the details of your gloves, including size,



colors and so on?

Jenny: We will quote our rock-bottom price.

Abigail: Please do not fail to mention in your offer the quantity available.

Jenny: We also allow a proper discount according to the order quantity.

Abigail: OK, your early reply will be highly appreciated.

Jenny: Thank you again for your interest in our products.

询价

阿比盖尔：我们对高品质手套有稳定的需求，特别是白色的。

珍妮：感谢您对我们的产品感兴趣。

阿比盖尔：你们有价目单和有图示的商品目录吗？

珍妮：有啊，这些是我们的目录和现行的价格表。

阿比盖尔：谢谢。

珍妮：您可以看出材料都是优质的，样式也很新颖。您一定同意我们的产品和价格能吸引最挑剔的买主。

阿比盖尔：请报**CIF**价，并给我们寄一份手套的详细介绍，包括尺码、颜色等。

珍妮：我们将给您报最优惠的价格。

阿比盖尔：报价时请说明可供数量。

珍妮：根据您订货的数量，我们会给予一定的折扣。

阿比盖尔：好的，请尽早回复，我们将不胜感激。

珍妮：再一次感谢您对我们产品的关注。

注释：

steady /'stedɪ/

a. 稳定的

illustrated catalogue 插图目录

superior /su:'piəriə/

a. 上好的



appeal

/ə'pi:l/

v. 吸引

discount

/'dɪskaunt/

n. 折扣

rock-bottom price

最低价格

4. 订购产品 Ordering the goods

Placing an order



Buyer: I'd like to order 500 pairs of Rainbow socks.

Seller: Rainbow socks are one of our best selling goods. They are out of stock at the moment.

Buyer: Are you expecting any to come in soon?

Seller: We expect to have them back in stock around May 10. However, we can provide you with another brand of similar quality.

Buyer: What's the brand?



Seller: It's Sunflower, also one of our best-selling goods, which we can sell for as low as US\$1.5 each.

Buyer: I'd like to place a trial order for the Sunflower socks then.

Seller: That's fine. How many pairs would you like to order?

Buyer: 300. If the goods sell as well as we expect, we will place further orders in the near future.

Seller: OK.

Buyer: Please prepare the sales contract. After signing the contract, we will apply for the L/C in your favor.

Seller: OK, I will prepare the sales contract as soon as we can.

下订单

买方：我想订**500**双彩虹牌袜子。

卖方：彩虹牌袜子是我们这里卖得最好的产品，现在暂时缺货。

买方：会很快进货吗？

卖方：我们预计在**5月10号**左右进货。不过，我们可以向您提供同样质量的另一种品牌的袜子。

买方：是什么品牌的？

卖方：向日葵牌，这也是我们的一个畅销货品。我们开价很低，每双**1.5**美元。

买方：我订购一些向日葵牌袜子作为试单吧。

卖方：好的。您要订多少？

买方：**300**双。如果货物的销售情况像我们预期的一样好，我们不久还会继续订购。

卖方：好的。

买方：请准备好销售合同。在签订好合同之后，我们将申请以你方为受益人的信用证。

卖方：好的，我会尽快准备销售合同的。

注释：

brand /brænd/

n. 品牌

similar /'sɪmɪlə/

a. 相似的

trial order 试单

apply for 申请

out of stock 无现货的，无库存的

5. 付款 Paying the bill**Terms of payment**

Buyer: Well, we've settled the questions of price, quality and quantity. Now what about the terms of payment?

Seller: We only accept payment with irrevocable letter of credit payable against shipping documents.

Buyer: I see. Could you make an exception and accept D/A or D/P?

Seller: I'm afraid not. We insist on a

letter of credit.

Buyer: To tell you the truth, a letter of credit would increase the cost of our import. When I open a letter of credit with the bank, I have to pay a deposit. That'll tie up my money and increase my cost.

Seller: Consult your bank, please, and see if they will reduce the required deposit to a minimum.

支付条款

买方： 好吧，既然价格、质量和数量问题都已谈妥，现在来谈谈付款方式怎么样？

卖方： 我们只接受不可撤销的、凭装运单据付款的信用证。

买方： 我明白。你们能不能破例接受承兑交单或付款交单？

卖方： 恐怕不行，我们坚持信用证付款。

买方： 老实说，信用证会增加我方进口

货物的成本。要在银行开立信用证，我得付一笔押金。这样会占用我的资金，因而会增加成本。

卖方：你和开证行商量一下，看他们能否把押金减少到最低限度。

注释：

irrevocable letter of credit

不可撤销的信用证

D/A(documents against acceptance)

承兑交单

D/P(documents against payment)

付款交单

6. 保险 Insurance

Insurance



Helen: I'm calling to discuss about the insurance rates you've requested for your order.

Henry: I believe that we have requested an amount of twenty-five percent

above the invoice value?

Helen: Yes, that's right. We have no problem complying with your request, but we think that the amount is a bit excessive.

Henry: We've had a lot of trouble in the past with damaged goods.

Helen: I understand your concern. However, the normal rates for goods of this type is 10% of the total invoice amount.

Henry: We would feel more comfortable with the additional insurance coverage.

Helen: Unfortunately, if you want to expand the coverage, we will have to charge you extra for the additional cost.

Henry: But the fee was supposed to be included in the quotation.

Helen: Yes, but we quoted you normal coverage at regular rates.

Henry: I see.

Helen: We can, however, arrange the extra coverage. But I suggest you contact your insurance agent there and compare rates.

Henry: You're right. It might be cheaper on my end.

Helen: Fax me whatever rates you find there and I'll compare them with what we can offer.

保险

海伦：我打电话来是想讨论你所要求的订单保险额的级别。

亨利：我想我们要求的是高于发票价值**25%**的保险金额。

海伦：是的，没错。我们可以答应这个要求，但是我们觉得金额有点太高。

亨利：我们过去有太多货物毁损的困扰。

海伦：我了解你的考虑。然而，一般这类产品的保险额度是发票总额的

10%。

亨利：有额外的保障会让我们觉得安全些。

海伦：很遗憾，如果你们想增加保险额的话，我们就得向你们收取额外的费用。

亨利：但是保险应该包含在报价里了。

海伦：是的，但是我们向你们报的价是一般比例下的正常保险额。

亨利：我了解。

海伦：不过，超出的保险额我们可以再商量。但是我建议你和你那边的保险代理商联络并比较一下价格。

亨利：你说得没错，在这边可能会比较便宜。

海伦：不论你那里找到的是哪一种价格都传真给我，我会和我们可以提供的价格来作比较。

注释：

coverage

/'kʌvərɪdʒ/

n. 保险项目或范围

excessive

/ɪk'sesɪv/

a. 过多的

plus /plʌs/

v. 加上

charge /tʃa:dʒ/

v. 收取

regular /'regjulə/

a. 正常的，固定的

additional /ə'dɪʃənəl/

a. 添加的；附加的；额外的

7. 包装 Packaging

About packaging



Johnson: I suppose Packaging will be done strictly in accordance with the contract stipulations.

William: Yes, strictly according to the contract.

Johnson: Now, Let's talk about marking. Do you use indelible paint?

William: We have received instructions



from Mr. Brown on marking. Water-repellent indelible paint is to be used.

Johnson: Fine. And as the package is to be transshipped in Hong Kong, we must make sure that the package are strong enough to stand all the handling.

William: That has been taken into account. The boxes to be used are strong and waterproof. They are seaworthy and can stand rough handling on the wharves.

Johnson: Another question, William. It's about labeling. We require three languages on the labels: English, French and Chinese.

William: We'll see to it that three languages are used on the labels. Any other requirements?



Johnson: Yes, one more thing. "Keep dry" should be marked on the boxes.

William: All right. All that you have just suggested will be included in the contract.

Johnson: I think that's all I want to say about packing and marking.

William: If there's anything more you want to do, just let me know.

Johnson: OK, many thanks.

货物包装

约翰逊：我想包装一定会严格按照合同规定进行吧？

威廉：对，就是严格按合同进行包装。

约翰逊：那么，关于唛头，你们是否使用不褪色的涂料？

威廉：布朗先生已指过，我们会使用防水、不褪色涂料。

约翰逊：很好。还有，这批货要在香港转船，必须确保箱子牢固，经得住

多次装卸。

威廉：我们已经考虑到这点，使用的是坚固的防水箱子，适用于海运并能经受码头的野蛮装卸。

约翰逊：还有标签问题，威廉。我们要求标签使用三种文字：英文、法文和中文。

威廉：我们一定保证在标签上使用这三种文字。您还有什么其他要求吗？

约翰逊：还有一件事，货箱上要标明“保持干燥”。

威廉：好的，您刚才所提的要求，都将列入合同。

约翰逊：关于包装和唛头，我没有什么要补充的了。

威廉：如果您还有什么要求，尽管通知我。

约翰逊：好，谢谢！

注释：

stipulation /,stɪpju'leɪʃən/

n. 规定

indelible /ɪn'deləbl/

a. 不褪色的

parcel /'pɑ:sl/

n. 包裹

waterproof /'wɔ:təpru:f/

a. 防水的

wharves /hwɔ:vz/

n. 码头

8. 投诉 Complaints**Making a claim**

Green: There's something you could help me with.

Smith: Please go ahead.

Green: I ordered 10,000 pairs of lady's shoes, but I received the same amount of men's beyond expectation.



Smith: I'm sorry, sir. I was informed just now that someone in our company has made a mistake in filling your order. I apologize to your company on behalf of our company.

Green: Can you do anything about the goods mistakenly shipped?

Smith: We'll manage to send you the correct goods as quickly as possible.

Green: How long should we wait? I hope our clients can get them before the New Year's Day.

Smith: We'll try our best to ship the goods by the end of the month.

Green: How about the wrong goods?

Smith: If you could sell them at spot price at your end, so much the better.

Green: I'm afraid it's not an easy job because the design is not popular in China. But for the sake of

friendship, we'll be glad to help you.

Smith: Your offer to help sell the goods will be highly appreciated.

投诉

格林：有件事您得帮助我解决。

史密斯：请说。

格林：本来我订购的是**10,000**双女式皮鞋，但是没想到收到的却是相同数目的男式皮鞋。

史密斯：真是太抱歉了，先生。刚才得到通知，我们公司某人填错了你们的订货单。我愿代表我公司向贵公司道歉。

格林：运错的货物，您看怎么办？

史密斯：我们设法尽快把你方的订货运来。

格林：需要等多长时间？我希望我们的客户能在元旦前收到这批货。

史密斯：我方尽力在月底将这批货发出来。

格林：错发的货怎么办？

史密斯：如果你们能就地现价销掉，那是

最好的。

格林：恐怕这不是件轻而易举的工作。

因为这种式样在中国不大受欢迎。不过如果你们可以削价，我们将乐于帮忙。

史密斯：贵方提供帮助销售这批货物，我们深表谢意。

注释：

beyond /bɪ'jɒnd/

v. 超过

apologize /ə'pɒlədʒaɪz/

v. 道歉

spot price 现货价格

[General Information]

书名=从零开始学英语“袋着走”

作者=

页数=574

SS号=96090003

DX号=

出版日期=

出版社=